

Peace Corps

Pre-service Training Mongolian Language Book



TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	4
MONGOLIAN LANGUAGE PRIMER	5
UNIT ONE: GREETINGS	14
Lesson 1: Greeting, being greeted, and saying goodbye.	15
The Cyrillic alphabet: reading, writing, and pronunciation	
2nd person pronouns: “Та” vs. “чи”	
Yes/No question particle: уу? and үү?	
Additional Greetings	
Verbs: байх, байна, байгаа, vs. байдаг	
Lesson 2: Introductions and asking for names.	23
Personal, Possessive, and Objective pronouns: би, миний, намайг, etc.	
Question particles: бэ? and вэ?	
Lesson 3: Asking for information about names, countries, languages	26
Ablative case: -аас, -ээс, -оос, -өөс	
CRASH COURSE ON MONGOLIAN VERBS	31
UNIT TWO: FAMILY	33
Lesson 1: Talking about family members	34
Plural possessive suffix: -хан	
Question word: хэн?	
Accusative case (direct object): -ыг, -ийг, -г	
Negative particles: биш, үгүй, -гүй	
Positive particle: мөн	
Genitive case: -ын, -ийн, -н, -ы, -ний	
Lesson 2: Numbers and family members	40
Question particles: юу? юү?	
Comitative case ending: -тай, -тэй, -той	
Possessive particles: минь, чинь, тань, нь, маань	
Writing numbers and adding -н	
The year and dates (“Year”: жил vs. он)	
Birthdays	
Lesson 3: Giving and receiving information about someone’s job	47
Adding чин, аач ⁴ , ч, гч to signify professions	
Present simple (habitual) tense: -даг, -дэг, -дог, -дөг	
Present continuous tense: -ж/ч байна	
Dative-Locative Case: -д/т	
UNIT THREE: FOOD	53
Lesson 1: Foods and expressing likes and dislikes	54
Likes and Dislikes	
Interrogative	
Lesson 2: Describing food needs and expressing satisfaction	50
Future tense: -на ⁴ ; Future (and recent past) tense: -лаа ⁴	
Want or desire: -маар ⁴ байна	
Verbs as adjectives before a noun: -сан ⁴ + noun	
ЧАДАХ, БОЛОХ, AND YOU	64

Lesson 3: Selecting food and talking with sales people	66
Vocabulary: words of quantity	
Indicator of intent (let me/us): verb+я, ө, е	
Accusative endings: using numbers with nouns (нэгийг, хоёрыг, etc.)	
Special Feature: Naadam!	71
UNIT FOUR: TRAVELING	73
Lesson 1: Exchanging phone numbers and asking permission	74
Collective numerals (the four of us, etc.): хоёулаа, дөрвүүлээ, etc.	
Asking permission: -ж/ч болох уу?	
ИНГЭХ and ТЭГЭХ	
Special Feature: Guide to Texting	
Lesson 2: Requesting and arranging transportation services	80
Prepositions of Location	
Absolute vs. Relative Directions	
Directionals: хаана, хаашаа, хаагуур	
Ordered Actions	
Polite imperative suffix: -аарай ⁴	
Lesson 3: Traveling by train, plane or bus	87
Telling and asking the time	
Directional suffixes: -руу, -рүү, -луу, -лүү	
Хэд, хэдэн: how much/ many?	
Time post-positions: дараа, өмнө	
Lesson 4: Asking for the location of objects and replying	93
Question word: юугаар?	
Reflexive (possessive) suffix: -аа, -ээ, -оо, -өө	
THE MAP	96
UNIT FIVE: CLOTHES	98
Lesson 1: Clothing and preference	99
Present continuous (-ж/ч байна): review, negative and question forms	
Modal particles: юм, ч, -аа ⁴	
Meanings and uses: бас	
Verbs that take a dative case ending: таарах, таалагдах, зохих	
Lesson 2: Giving compliments and buying clothes	105
Suffix to form verbs from adjectives: -дах ⁴	
Colloquial speech in the market	
UNIT SIX: PEOPLE	110
Lesson 1: Describing someone's appearance and emotions	111
Comparisons and superlatives	
Expressing probability: байх	
Question word: аль хэр?	
Lesson 2: Describing personal characteristics	115
Questions to request people's characteristics	
Нь: Ээж нь, аав нь, том нь	
Expressing "By the way...: or "OH!..." with нээрээ	
Expressing first impressions with юм байна лээ	
Lesson 3: Describing one's daily life	118

Adverbs of frequency (always, sometimes, never, etc.)
 Habitual action and the suffix -даг⁴
 Time words with the dative-locative case: цагт, сард
 Simultaneous and sequential actions: verb-ж/ч, verb-аад⁴.
 Conversational interjections ('hey,' 'okay,' 'ouch,' etc.)

UNIT SEVEN: HEALTH	125
Lesson 1: Describing one’s physical condition, expressing needs and asking for help..	126
Health-related questions (what’s wrong?, etc.)	
Expressing needs: хэрэгтэй	
Expressing obligation (must): ёстой	
Expressing willingness (of course, certainly): -лгүй яхав	
“To do something for someone” (plus making requests): verb-аад ⁴ өгөх	
Making requests, -аад ⁴ өгөөч	
Lesson 2: Reported speech and messages about one’s health condition	134
Verb: гэ- (гэж, гэсэн) meanings and uses	
Asking and explaining “Why?”	
UNIT EIGHT: SEASONS AND WEATHER	139
Lesson 1: The weather	140
Probability: байх vs. -ж/ч магадгүй	
Wish/desire (wanting something to happen): -аасай ⁴	
Phrasal verbs: орох	
Special Grammar Point: Conditional phrases -вал ⁴ /-бал ⁴ , бол	
Lesson 2: The seasons	148
Lesson 3: Holiday and vacations	
The Instrumental Case: -аар ⁴	
Free Time: Чөлөөт цаг	
New Year and Tsaagan Sar	
UNIT NINE: SAFETY AND SECURITY	154
Lesson 1: Asking for help, safety, safe driving, and privacy.....	155
Imperative forms (polite and strong): -аарай ⁴ , -аач ⁴ , битгий, бүү, etc.	
Шүү and its various uses	
‘Ч’ particle to express “any” or “none” (no one, anyone, nowhere, nothing, etc.)	
Lesson 2: Using Гэхдээ, гэвч, and харин. Big but(t)s.	159
Special Feature: Sensitive Information Page	162
UNIT TEN: HOUSING	163
Lesson 1: Describing someone’s home	164
Lesson 2: Requests and complaints	169
The completed or “unknown” past tenses: -чих and -лаа ⁴	
Causative case: -уул/-үүл or -лга	
APPENDICES / SUPPLEMENTARY CLARIFICATION LANGUAGE	174
INDEX OF GRAMMAR	197

Mongolian Language Introduction

Welcome to Mongolia!

Congratulations on your entrance to Peace Corps Mongolia! Prepare yourself, children of summer!

The book you are currently reading is designed to aid Peace Corps trainees in language acquisition. It is designed to coincide with classroom instruction from Mongolian language teachers using a Competency Based Curriculum. The objective of the CBC model is for students to acquire language competencies that they may later apply to specific situations. Competencies are gained by practicing dialogues and learning vocabulary specific to functions. We chose competencies based on what we believe are the most useful words and phrases to help you adjust to life in Mongolia.

This book is not designed for self-instruction by persons unfamiliar with the language. However, after using it in conjunction with language classes, you will grow accustomed to Mongolian, thereby making the book practical for independent study. This most recent addition has a variety of primers and supplementary material included, and thus should prove to be useful for many months after you finish your Pre-Service Training.

Learning Mongolian is not an easy task by any stretch of the imagination. The grammar, pronunciation, alphabet, and colloquial speech are very different from their English counterparts. Do not be discouraged. Mongolians will appreciate and encourage your acquisition of the language, and proper study of Mongolian will allow you to better integrate with your future communities, counterparts, agencies, and the random cab driver that decides to tell you all the problems he has with the way Mongolia is developing. There is a saying in Mongolian that is roughly translated as “If you have a language, you have a leg” (хэлтэй бол хөлтэй). The idea is that if you can speak a language, you will be able to travel within the domain of that language. Likewise, the Mongolian language will take you far in this country.

This edition has been extensively revised by Language and Culture Coordinator N. Gantsetseg “Boss Lady”, Language Instructor S. Oyunchimeg “Oonchig”, M22 Christine “Smee” Meade, M23s Katie “The Contender” Bowen-Williams and Nick “The Bear Lord” Bradish, M24s Zachary “Skeeter” Murray, Jake “The Alaskan Assassin” Borst, and Cal “Boose” Brackin.

We pay homage to the past edition’s editing by George Economides, M13 PCVL, former DMO of Peace Corps Mongolia, and Mongol Language Master Ninja.

Сайн сураарай, манайхан!

I. MONGOLIAN LANGUAGE

Mongolian is the primary language of Mongolia, Inner Mongolia, and several provinces of the People’s Republic of China. By origin, Mongolian is one of the languages in the Mongol group from the Altaic family. The Mongol group consists of the Mongol, Buryad, Khalmik, Tunghsian or Santa (China), Dagur (Inner Mongolia, China), Monguor (China), Baonang (China), and Mongol (Afghanistan) languages.

All of Mongol-speaking nations have the following writing systems:

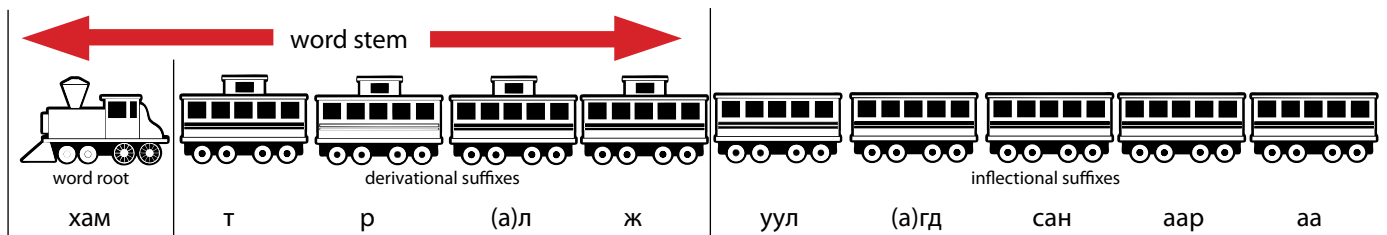
- The Mongol language in the new Mongol writing, based on the Cyrillic alphabet (in Mongolia);
- The Buryad language in the new Buryad writing, based on the Cyrillic alphabet (in the Buryad Autonomous Republic);
- The Khalmik language in the new Khalmik writing, based on the Cyrillic alphabet (in the Khalmik Autonomous Republic);
- The Inner Mongol language in the Mongol script (in the Autonomous Region of Inner Mongolia, PRC) and;
- The Oirad language, in the clear script (in the Xinjiang Uigur Autonomous Region, PRC).

II. THE MODERN MONGOL LANGUAGE

Modern Mongolian, based on the Khalkh dialect, developed following the Mongolian People’s Revolution in 1921. The introduction of the new script (Cyrillic) in the 1940s arose from the development of a new stage in Mongolia’s national literary language. Today, Mongolian is comprised of several dialects including Khalkh, Buryad, Oirat, Tsahar, Harchin, Horchin, and Ordos. According to the scholar Luvsanvandan, modern Mongolian has 46 sounds, including 22 vowel sounds.

Major characteristics of Mongolian include:

- Agglutination - From the Latin ‘agglutinate’ - ‘to stick on.’ An agglutinative language means that words are made up by adding suffixes to a root word in a linear sequence. This type of word-building can be understood easily with the example of a train. The following example shows this construction clearly.



Тосгоныхон *хамтралжуулагдсанаараа* илүү сайн амьдрах болов.

Village people, *in that they were caused to be organized into collective farms*, improved their lives.

It is impressive that an idea which takes 11 English words to say can be expressed with 1 Cyrillic word.

Mongolian Grammar by Rita Kullmann, pg.33

Another example: from my classmates

angi + iinhan + aas + aa

class + mates + from + my/his/her/our/your/their

- Subject-Object-Verb word order - sentences end with verbs.
- Vowel harmony - vowel sounds in suffixes vary based on the preceding vowel sounds of the word those suffixes modify. See this introduction’s section IV for more information and examples.

- Stress placement - Stress is typically placed on the first syllable of a word. Other vowels are then unstressed or reduced in their pronunciation. If the second syllable of a word is a double vowel or diphthong, stress moves to the second syllable. See this introduction's section V for more information and examples.
- Lack of subject/verb agreement and plurals - though plural suffixes exist, the situations in which they are used is limited. In addition, pluralization of verbs is often unnecessary.
- Active verbs - compared with Indo-European languages, verbs that stand alone and nouns that act as verbs are much more prevalent.

Mongols still use two types of official writing: the classical Mongolian script and Cyrillic. The classical Mongolian alphabet, which is written vertically, is a unique script used by speakers of all the various dialects, including those in China and Russia. For about a thousand years, Mongols have been able to communicate effectively with each other in writing, thanks to standardized spelling. In spite of increasing interest in using only the classical alphabet, along with the decision by Parliament to use it for official papers, the majority of Mongolian people use the Cyrillic alphabet, which was adopted in the early 1940s. The Cyrillic-based spelling system has a regular set of correspondences between sounds and spellings, which makes learning Mongolian easier. However, the Latin alphabet is also used unofficially for cell phone text messaging, online chatting, and e-mailing.

III. A BRIEF INTRODUCTION TO CASE-BASED LANGUAGES

A significant difference between English and Mongolian is the use of cases. In English, case status is typically expressed by word order. Notable exceptions include the difference between “I”, “my”, and “me”, all of which center around a single referent, but have different functions in a sentence. Imagine, instead, an English language in which “I”, the root word for self-reference, was modified by suffixes in order to express these different functions in a sentence. For example, we might say “I-/possessive suffix/” instead of “my”, and “I-/accusative suffix/” instead of “me”. Likewise, we would say “book”, “book-/possessive suffix/”, and “book-/accusative suffix/”, instead of “book,” “book’s,” and “book” (as a direct object). When using particular verbs, particular cases of nouns and pronouns are required. Cases show what role a noun plays in a sentence.

This is the way that cases operate in Mongolian. In simple sentences, cases are sometimes left out or implied. But in even mildly-complex sentences, proper case usage is extremely helpful for accurately expressing oneself, and a knowledge of these cases and how they work will help you understand others. For a quick glance at Mongolian cases, how they are labeled, their characteristics, and examples, see sections II and IV of the appendix “A Brief Introduction to Mongolian Grammar”.

Information Overload is a very real and serious affliction you may experience over the course of PST. If you experience Information Overload, take a step back and remember that the core competencies in the Exit Passes are where you need to be to pass the Language Proficiency Interviews. This book is meant to stay with you throughout your two years of service, so don't stress if you simply can't remember everything now. There's time!

That being said, language learning isn't all about the tests. The Mongolian language will help you build relationships with contacts, service providers, and friends in your community. Never lose sight of the true goal: penetrating beyond the veneers of language and culture to form those deep human connections that endure the weathering of time.

IV. VOWELS

1. Vowel Harmony - This section is meant to serve as both a primer and a reference for vowel harmony in Mongolian. Skim the section before you begin your PST Mongolian lessons, and then refer back throughout the book. Vowel harmony is useful in understanding how to spell, pronounce, and conjugate verbs. Please note that suffixes will often be marked with a superscript four or two, depending on the suffix. This means that the vowels in the suffix will change depending on the previous vowel sounds. Though this may seem difficult at first, it might help to think of it as a continued vowel sound interrupted by consonants. Really, you don't have to think about what the vowel sound in the suffix will be, since you just said a vowel sound in the word you attached the suffix to! Just ride the vowel sound (stimutacs), man...

	Masculine Vowels (Back)			Feminine Vowels (Front)			Neutral
Basic Vowels	А	О	У	Э	Ө	Ү	И
Double (long) vowels	АА	ОО	УУ	ЭЭ	ӨӨ	ҮҮ	
Diphthongs	АЙ	ОЙ	УЙ	ЭЙ		ҮЙ	
Y-vowels	Я	Ё	Ю(у)	Е		Ю(ү)	
Auxiliary vowels	Ы			ИЙ			

Masculine vowels: Also called 'back' vowels because they are pronounced in the back of the mouth/throat.

Feminine vowels: Also called 'front' vowels because they are pronounced in the front of the mouth.

Neuter: Neuter vowels can be paired with masculine or feminine vowels. If a word has only neuter vowels, the word takes feminine case endings.

2. Long Vowels are formed when two of the same vowels are placed together. Singular vowels after the first syllable of a word are dropped in favor of pronouncing the consonants, but long vowels require the speaker to pronounce the vowel sound.

For example:

Байгаа (bay-gaa)

Эмээ (im-ee)

3. Diphthongs are formed when a vowel is followed by a й (харас и). For example, ай, эй, ой, уй, үй. Diphthongs are pronounced fully at all parts of a word.

4. Signs: There are two 'signs' in Mongolian that function as vowel sound modifiers. These two signs were taken from the Russian alphabet and are used as pronunciation guidelines. They are:

The hard sign - хатуугийн тэмдэг: ъ

The soft sign - зөөлний тэмдэг: ь

Practice the difference with a Mongolian:

бас/ баас

байх/ баах

As you can see, the two signs appear very similar, but they make a huge difference in how you pronounce a word. The signs will always affect the vowel in front of it. For example,

	Word	Effect	Final Pronunciation	
ь:	морь	мо"рь	мо"р	horse
	харь	ха"рь	ха"р	to go home (stem)

The soft sign softens the vowel in front of it, and creates a soft diphthong. The hard sign, below, hardens or intensifies the pronunciation of the vowel in front.

	Word	Emphasis
ъ:	харъя	ха <u>р</u> ъя


The soft sign can also soften consonant pronunciation. Likewise the hard sign also strengthens consonant pronunciation.

For example: Вьетнам Нью-Йорк.

Compare:

	Word	Change	Emphasis	Final Pronunciation
ь	харья	ха"рья		ха"рий
ъ	харъя		ха <u>р</u> ъя	ха <u>р</u> ий
ь	больё	бо"льё		бо"лий
ъ	больё		бо <u>л</u> ё	бо <u>л</u> ий

Pronunciation Drill



Have your teacher or host family repeat these words aloud to hear the difference! Эдгээр үгнүүдийг багшаараа, гэрийнхнээрээ чангаар хэлүүлж дуудлагын ялгааг сонсоорой.

хар хаар хайр харь

5. The Many Faces of И.

There are six vowels in Mongolian that can be pronounced as “и”. It depends on the word, and how the word will change, but here is the basic breakdown.

“И”					
ь	ъ	и	й	ы	(э)

The last vowel э is pronounced “eh” as in “ethics”. When the э appears by itself in a word, it is often pronounced like an и. For example,

ЭМЭЭ	<u>и</u> nee	grandmother
ТЭМЭЭ	<u>и</u> nee	camel
ЭНЭ	<u>и</u> nn	this
ТЭР	<u>и</u> r	that

V. PRONUNCIATION BASICS

Emphasis

Mongolian words are broken into syllables based on separation of vowel sounds. A vowel at the beginning of the word can be its own syllable. All following syllables will begin with a consonant.

баяртай (happy, good bye): баяр-тай
 машин (car): ма-шин
 тоглоом (game): тог-лоом
 эмэгтэй (female, adj.): э-мэг-тэй

Simple, yes? Don't let the examples fool you! Syllables are not equally emphasized in Mongolian. Generally, the first syllable is emphasized in a word. This rule is broken when the second syllable in a word is a diphthong or a long vowel. Thus, the above example “тоглоом” could be phonetically written like this:

ТОГЛООМ (game): Тог-ЛООМ

See how the first vowel sound is all smaller to show that the second syllable is emphasized? We won't do that for you for the rest of the book. It's up to you to remember this, and try to put emphasis in words properly. It takes time, but you'll get the hang of it, no problem!

Dropping Vowels

While words require vowel harmony, some vowels are omitted from pronunciation if they are in the second syllable of the word and are not a diphthong or long vowel sound. This is especially important in pronouncing conjugated verbs in the future tense, -на⁴. Even though a verb has a -на⁴ ending, the last vowel is not pronounced, leaving a hard 'n' sound instead. For example,

ирнэ (ирэх; will go)	ир-нн
авна (авах; will buy)	ав-нн
очино (очих; will visit)	оч-нн
сэлнэ (сэлэх; will swim)	сэл-нн
энэ (this)	энн
дарга (boss)	дар ^г

Consonant Pronunciation

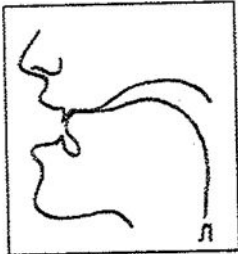
In this section, we have chosen some consonants that are pronounced slightly different in Mongolian than in English. Though you will mostly wrestle with the vowel sounds in learning Mongolian initially, you may also struggle with some of these consonants. We hope these explanations help.

- П/Ф The Mongolian letters “П” and “Ф” are anglicized as “P” and “F” respectively. These are non-native sounds for the Mongolian language, and are typically only seen in words that have been borrowed from other languages. As pronounced in Mongolian, they are plosives, that is, it sounds like you're spitting when you speak them, as opposed to their softer English counterparts.

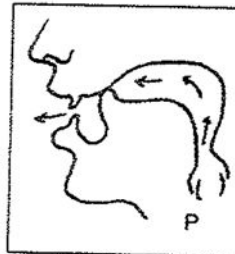
• Л/Р Л and Р, the Mongolian equivalents of the English “L” and “R” respectively, are pronounced slightly different in Mongolian. Rather than the static placement of the tongue, these are what we might call ‘moving’ consonants. If you can roll your R’s, you’re going to do just fine.

Note: The Л sound in Mongolian is also a drawn out, or long, consonant sound. This means that the sound can carry over from one syllable to the next. For example,

Долоо (seven) is pronounced as if there were two Лs: дол-лоо

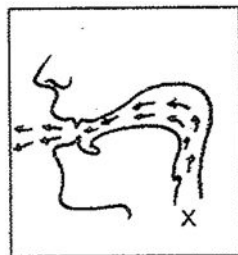


When pronouncing the Mongolian /l/, first place the tip of your tongue on the lower teeth in a relaxed manner for a moment. Then pull the tip of your tongue up along the inside of the upper teeth. The hissing sound is made by air flowing out between the tongue and the front of the teeth.



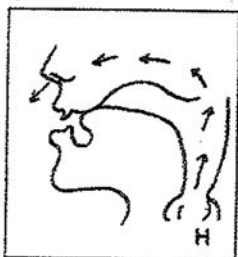
Mongolian /r/ is made by allowing the tip of the tongue to rest easily against the alveolar ridge while the passing air causes the tip of the tongue to flap quickly three or more times in succession.

• X The Mongolian “X” is often anglicized as “Kh”. This is slightly inaccurate, as there is no glottal stop involved in the letter, as the “K” would imply (when we say ‘stop’ here, we mean a consonant sound that cannot be drawn out. For example, an “s” can be drawn out: “ssss”. But how do you pronounce “kkkk”? It requires repeating the “k” sound because the “k” is a stop, just like “t,” “d,” “b,” and “p”). Instead, the Mongolian “x” is a sound that can be drawn out. Think of the “H” sound in “hummus”, and move it a little further back like you are gargling. A little more. Li’l more. Too far! Ah, just right.

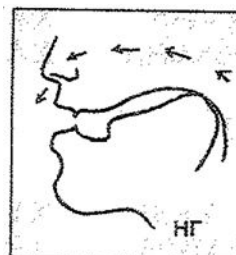


This variant of the /h/ sound is a strongly pronounced voiceless glottal fricative; it is found in back vowel words only.

• H Though the Mongolian H is easily anglicized as “N”, it sometimes takes a slightly different sound. Often it is simply the N sound that would be found in the name “Nick”. However, when the H is the final letter in a word, it is pronounced as the final sound in the word “hung”. Though this may seem a small difference at first, look no further than the difference between the words for ‘king’ and ‘where’: хаан and хаана. Remember, his name is not Ching-gis Where. Likewise, there is no toilet king.



This sound is found in all other positions except before Г or as the last letter in a word.



This sound is spelled hγ in the middle of a word, or h in the end of a word.

БАЯРЛАЛАА: The Best Pronunciation Guide, Ever

Баярлалаа (Thank you) is one of the first words you will learn that will stick with you throughout your service, but it is also one of the greatest words to demonstrate multiple pronunciation rules.

Vowel Harmony: All masculine vowels; а, and я.

Pronounced with two syllables, the second beginning with the second л.

Р & Л: Moving consonants.

Final long vowels pronounced; аа.

VI. VERBS

Mongolian is a very verb-dependent language. They are so useful that some replies can be given with only a verb. If you have not loved verbs before, you will come to love them in time. Some amongst you will become verb ninjas, cutting to the quick with the mere razor-sharp efficiency of a single, properly-conjugated verb.

Presentation of verbs in this book

New verbs will be presented in the infinitive case, which is denoted by the “-х⁴” suffix. Though this verb form is grammatically useful, you will most likely not use it when you are initially learning Mongolian. Regardless, you must know it, as well as the verb stem, in order to properly conjugate verbs in Mongolian. Take a moment to examine the following verbs, presented in the infinitive, stem, and simple past tense.

Infinitive	Stem	Simple Past Tense
ЯВАХ	ЯВ-	ЯВСАН
УУХ	УУ-	УУСАН
ИДЭХ	ИД-	ИДСЭН

You’ll notice that the verb stem is a zero suffix. This also coincides with the imperative tense, as in English (Go! Drink! Eat!). You will also note that the vowel sound and final consonant of the infinitive are dropped in conjugation. That vowel sound is replicated in the suffix, as according to vowel harmony. Please note that, in your Oxford-Monsudar dictionaries, stems are provided rather than the infinitive.

Conjugation

To conjugate verbs, one takes the stem, drops the infinitive suffix, and adds a suffix according to what one wants to express, for example, tense. Though Mongolian conjugation can be a very complex system, with multiple suffixes, the most that you will need to know by the end of pre-service training is simple conjugation with single suffixes. But don’t let that stop you if you got the itch to keep learning!

Verbs Ending in Ш, Ж, and Ч

Mongolian verbs ending in ш, ж, and ч take the -их ending regardless of previous vowels. For example,

очих: to visit

баяжих: to become rich

унших: to read

VII. BASIC WORD ORDER IN MONGOLIAN SENTENCES.

Basic word order in Mongolian can be shown in this acronym: STOP! Subject Time Object Predicate! So if you are confused, STOP a moment and think back. Below are some more complex examples, including sentences with flexible time and subject placements.

Subject	Predicate
Аав	явмаар байна.
Father	go want.
Father wants to go.	

Modifier	Subject	Predicate
Миний	аав	явмаар байна.
My	father	go want
(My father wants to go.)		

Place/ time	Subject	Predicate
Одоо	аав	явмаар байна.
Now	father	go want
(Father wants to go now.)		

Subject	place/time	predicate
Аав	Эрдэнэт рүү	явмаар байна.
Father	Erdenet to	go want
(Father wants to go to Erdenet.)		

Subject	object	predicate
Аав	машинаар	явмаар байна.
Father	car by	go want
(Father wants to go by car.)		

- For sentences with multiple modifiers, the following order is used.

Modifier with genitive suffixes	Numeral modifier	other modifiers	modified word
Аавын	гурван	шинэ	цамц
Father's	three	new	shirt

The following are examples of word order in Mongolian phrases.

• **Noun Phrases**

Adjective + noun:	улаан харандаа red pencil
Number + noun:	арван хонь ten sheep
Pronoun + noun:	миний ном my book
Demonstrative:	тэр ном that book
Participle + noun:	уйлж байгаа хүүхэд a crying boy
Participle phrase + noun:	гадаа уйлж байгаа хүүхэд a boy crying outside



Mongolian does not have articles as noun markers (like a, an, or the). In some cases speakers use the number neg (one) as an indefinite marker of a noun:

Би нэг харандаа авмаар байна.

I want to buy a pencil.



• **Verb Phrases**

Adverb + verb:	хурдан унших very fast
Verb + modifying verb:	явахаар шийдэх to decide to go

• **Other**

Adverb + adjective:	маш хурдан very fast
Preposition:	байшин дотор inside a house

Remember, you are embarking on a great journey studying Mongolian. Not everything will make sense at once, so be sure to check back to the introduction, other lessons, or jump forward to the supplementary sections. Use your book wisely, and good luck! Амжилт хүсье!

UNIT 1: GREETINGS

- Asking and answering personal questions
- Introductions and asking for names
- Saying, "Thank you" and, "Sorry"
- Greeting and being greeted
- Saying, "goodbye"

Learning Strategies from Katie Bowen-Williams, CYD, M23



та-та-туhraа (charades) is an acceptable form of communication at first, but try to get new vocabulary to describe your charades from your counterparts after the laughter dies down.

Write down the words! Most of us hear words multiple times before we remember them, and if we don't write them down and see the word on paper, you will probably forget the word again soon. Writing a word down helps you remember because you have heard it and written it and seen it. Keep these written words with you and use them until you have them memorized.

Flash cards are a nice way to practice, and you can also use them with a Mongolian host sibling who is studying English.

Lesson 1

Шинэ үг New Words

Та	You (older than you)
Чи	You (younger than you)
Сайн	Good/fine
Сонин	News
Юмгүй	Nothing
Тайван	Calm /peaceful
Байх	To be
Сайн байна уу?	How are you?
Баяртай!	Goodbye!
Юу	What?
Тийм	Yes
Үгүй	No
Уучлаарай	Sorry

Dialogue

Жон: Та сайн байна уу?
 Батаа: Сайн. Сайн байна уу?
 Жон: Сайн. Баяртай!
 Батаа: Баяртай!

Жон: Сайн уу, Туяа?
 Туяа: Сайн. Сайн уу?
 Жон: Сайн сайн. Сонин юу байна?
 Туяа: Юмгүй дээ. Чамаар юу байна?
 Жон: Тайван даа.

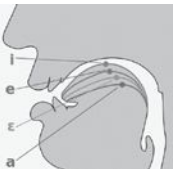
The Cyrillic Mongolian script was adopted in the 1940s. The Russian alphabet served as a basis for this new alphabet. The aim was to create a script which would reflect common pronunciation in the 20th century, making it easier for the average person. The ancient Mongolian script uses certain stems creating some confusing spelling rules in Cyrillic.

Cultural Note



+ даа⁴

The particle даа⁴ is a polite marker that modifies the word or verb before it. Without даа⁴, the answer “юмгүй” can seem a little harsh or rude. The particle softens the meaning from “nothing” to “oh, nothing much”.



Phonetic Drill

са	саа	сай	сайн	ба	баа	бай	байн	байна
да	даа	дай	дайн	ха	хаа	хай	хайн	хайна
на	наа	най	найм	та	таа	тай	тайл	тайван
я	яс	баяс	ай	айл	дайл	ё	ёс	соёл
	яр	баяр		зайл	хайл		ёр	хоёр
	ян	баян		тайр	хайр			

Match the letters that have the similar pronunciations. Төсөөтэй дуудлагатай үсгүүдийг холбо.

Aa	Aa
Bb	Бб
Cc	Вв
Dd	Гг
Ee	Дд
Ff	Ее
Gg	Ёё
Hh	Жж
Ii	Зз
Jj	Ии
Kk	й
Ll	Кк
Mm	Лл
Nn	Мм
Oo	Нн
Pp	Оо
Qq	Өө
Rr	Пп
Ss	Рр
Tt	Сс
Uu	Тт
Vv	Уу
Ww	Үү
Xx	Фф
Yy	Хх
Zz	Цц
	Чч
	Шш
	Ъ
	Ы
	Ь
	Ээ
	Юю
	Яя

Write the Mongolian Alphabet in print. Үсгүүдийг дармалаар бичих дасгал хий.

Aa	_____
Bb	_____
Vв	_____
Гг	_____
Дд	_____
Ее	_____
Ёё	_____
Жж	_____
Зз	_____
Ии	_____
й	_____
Кк	_____
Лл	_____
Мм	_____
Нн	_____
Оо	_____
Өө	_____
Пп	_____
Рр	_____
Сс	_____
Тт	_____
Уу	_____
Үү	_____
Фф	_____
Хх	_____
Цц	_____
Чч	_____
Шш	_____
Ъ	_____
Ы	_____
Ь	_____
Ээ	_____
Юю	_____
Яя	_____

Write the Mongolian Alphabet in cursive. Үсгүүдийг бичмэлээр бичих дасгал хий.

<i>Aa</i>	_____
<i>Бб</i>	_____
<i>Вв</i>	_____
<i>Гг</i>	_____
<i>Дд</i>	_____
<i>Ее</i>	_____
<i>Ёё</i>	_____
<i>Жж</i>	_____
<i>Зз</i>	_____
<i>Ии</i>	_____
<i>й</i>	_____
<i>Кк</i>	_____
<i>Лл</i>	_____
<i>Мм</i>	_____
<i>Нн</i>	_____
<i>Оо</i>	_____
<i>Өө</i>	_____
<i>Пп</i>	_____
<i>Рр</i>	_____
<i>Сс</i>	_____
<i>Тт</i>	_____
<i>Уу</i>	_____
<i>Үү</i>	_____
<i>Фф</i>	_____
<i>Хх</i>	_____
<i>Цц</i>	_____
<i>Чч</i>	_____
<i>Шш</i>	_____
<i>Ъ</i>	_____
<i>Ы</i>	_____
<i>Ь</i>	_____
<i>Ээ</i>	_____
<i>Юю</i>	_____
<i>Яя</i>	_____



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Listen and circle the letter you hear. Сонссон үсгээ дугуйл.

- | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | А | Б | В | Г | Д | Е | Ё | Ж | З | И | |
| 2. | А | Б | В | Г | Д | Е | Ё | Ж | З | И | |
| 3. | А | Б | В | Г | Д | Е | Ё | Ж | З | И | |
| 4. | А | Б | В | Г | Д | Е | Ё | Ж | З | И | |
| 5. | А | Б | В | Г | Д | Е | Ё | Ж | З | И | |
| 6. | К | Л | М | Н | О | Ө | П | Р | С | Т | У |
| 7. | К | Л | М | Н | О | Ө | П | Р | С | Т | У |
| 8. | К | Л | М | Н | О | Ө | П | Р | С | Т | У |
| 9. | К | Л | М | Н | О | Ө | П | Р | С | Т | У |

Exercise 2. Fill in the missing vowels. Орхигдсон үсгийг бич.

С	___	___	Н		Б	___	___	Р	Т	___	___		
Б	___	___	Н	___	Б	___	___	Р	Л	___	Л	___	___

Exercise 3. Write down your teachers' names. Багш нарынхаа нэрийг бич.

Exercise 4. Write down your classmates' names. Ангийнхныхаа нэрийг бич.

<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>

Exercise 5. Write down the words in Cyrillic that you learned or heard the first time. Хамгийн анх сурсан үгнүүдээсээ бич.

<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>

Exercise 6. Write down your host family members' names. Монгол гэрийнхнийхээ нэрийг бич.

<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>

Exercise 7. Practice reading these sentences in cursive. Write them in print letters. Бичмэлээр бичсэг өгүүлбэрүүдийг уншаад дармалаар бич.


1. Hello
2. What is your name?
3. Mongolian language.
4. How old are you?
5. A teacher went to the school.
6. Ganaa is an English teacher.
7. Do Americans like eggs?
8. Yesterday, John ate fish.
9. What kind of fruit is nice?
10. The children drank milk.

Сайн байна уу?
Таны нэр хэн бэ?
Монгол хэл.
Чи хэдт настай вэ?
Таны сургууль юу явсан.
Танаа анги хамт байх.
Америкууд өндөгнийг дуртай юу?
Нон өндөг заах идсэн.
Ямар нийс гэд вэ?
Хүүхдүүд сүү уусал.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

Sorry!

Mongolians use the verb to forgive (уучлах) to say sorry.
 (Намайг) Уучлаарай!
 Literally: please forgive (me)!



GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. 'ТА' and 'ЧИ'

- Та (you formal) is a pronoun that is used to appeal to or address an older respected person, foreigners, and strangers.
- Чи (you informal) is a pronoun that is used to address people of one's own age, younger people, or close friends.
- Mongolian children never address their parents using чи. Even older brothers and sisters are addressed by using та.

2. GREETINGS

- Based on 'та' and 'чи' and your relationship to the person, you can modify your greetings.

Та	Чи
Сайн байна уу та? Is there good? How's it going? Сайн, сайн. Good, good. (Fine.)	Сайн уу? Good? Сайн, сайн. Good, good. (Fine.)
Сонин юу байна? What's the news? Юмгүй дээ. Nothing (polite). Тайван даа. Peaceful (polite).	Юу байна? Чамаар юу байна? What's up? Юмгүй дээ. Nothing (polite). Тайван даа. Peaceful (polite).

- The greeting “Сайн байна уу?” should be used between people meeting for the first time, seeing each other for the first time in the day, or in an official situation.
- Greeting multiple people: as a teacher, you will often greet your entire class the first time you see them in a day.
 - Багш: Сайн байцгаана уу?
 - Сурагчид: Сайн. Сайн байна уу та?
 - Багш: Сайн, сайн.


3. QUESTION PARTICLES: “УУ” AND “ҮҮ”

- УУ, ҮҮ, ЮУ, and ЮҮ are question particles that are always placed at the end of a phrase; they change a sentence into a yes/no question. Other question words are not acceptable for these sentences. Which particle is used depends on the Vowel Harmony Rule. If the final sound or letter is a consonant and a short vowel, the УУ and ҮҮ are required.
- УУ? is used after words with the masculine vowels: а, о, у
- ҮҮ? is used after words with the feminine vowels: э, ө, ү

Yes/No questions where the last word in the sentence ends with a long vowel or diphthong require the ЮУ and ЮҮ question particles. Do not confuse the question particle ЮУ with the question word ЮУ (what), as seen in “Сонин юу байна?”.


- ЮУ? is used after words with the masculine long vowels and diphthongs: аа, оо, уу, ай, ой and уй.
- ЮУ? is used after words with the feminine long vowels and diphthongs: ээ, өө, үү, эй and үй.

The ЮУ and ЮУ are used to keep a combination of two long vowels or a diphthong and long vowel apart for clearer pronunciation. Байгаа уу? (Bay-gaa-oo) is simply too hard to say well, whereas Байгаа юу? (bay-gaa-yo?) has the y to break the long vowel sounds.




A note on “За”

Although this word can be roughly translated as “okay”, it does not necessarily imply that an agreement has been reached or that consent has been granted. It can simply mean, “Okay, I hear what you’ve said”.



“ААН” or “ААН ЗА”

These are ways of saying “Oh, I see.” or “Ah, I get it.” It is not usually appropriate to use “Тийм” in these instances.



4. ADDITIONAL GREETINGS

Mongolians, like Americans, usually respond positively when they are asked about their well-being and don’t talk about bad events until later in the conversation. Possible questions (Q) and answers (A) could be:


Q: Чиний бие сайн уу?
Is your body good?
(Are you feeling well?)
A: Сайн
Good. (Fine.)

Q: Амьдрал ямар байна?
How’s life?
A: Дажгүй ээ / давгүй давгүй.
Good, Ok.
A: Яахав дээ. So, so. Not too bad.

Goodbye: Here are various ways to say “goodbye”:

Баяртай.
За, дараа уулзъя.
Маргааш уулзъя!

Goodbye. (Lit: with happiness)
Okay, let’s meet later. (See you later.)
See you tomorrow.



уулзъя
-ья
This ending
is pronounced
'eee'.

5. БАЙХ: TO BE

БАЙНА / БАЙХГҮЙ

Байна is the positive simple present tense (am, is, are) form of the verb байх, while байхгүй is the negative simple present tense form. The root of this verb is бай- (be), and the infinitive form is байх (to be). Байна is a very versatile word, and one of the most common phrases used in everyday conversation. Байна can be used:

On the phone, when you answer.

Q: **Байна уу?** Hello? Are you there?

A: **Байна.** Hello. I am here.

As an inquiry. Nouns and adjectives placed before **байна** can express an inquiry about the presence of somebody, something, or the state of something. When inquiring about the state of something, it is proper to use **тийм / үгүй** to answer the question, not **байна / байхгүй**.

Q: **Жон байна уу?** Is John there?

A: **Байна / байхгүй.** Here/ Not here. (Yes / No)

Q: **Ном байна уу?** Is there a book?

A: **Байна / байхгүй.** Is/ Not here. (Yes / No)

Q: **Хүйтэн байна уу?** Is it cold?

A: **Тийм байна / Үгүй.** Yes, it is/ No, it is not. (Yes / No)



Байна



Байгаа

Asking for information or a thing wanted at the moment of asking. This information or thing is often present and specific, and the questioner needs the information or thing now. It is important to note that **байна** and **байгаа** both mean that the information or thing is present, but **байна** is used to answer if the information or thing is seen, while **байгаа** is used to answer if the information or thing is unseen.

Байна

A student in class approaches you. You are writing with a pen, and have two on the table. Your student asks:

Q: **Бал байна уу?** Do you have a pen?

A: **Байна.** Do. (Yes.)

Байгаа / бий

A student in class approaches you. You have two pens in your backpack. Your student asks:

Q: **Бал байна уу?** Do you have a pen?

A: **Байгаа / бий.** Do. (Yes.)

Байхгүй

A student in class approached you. You forgot all your pens at home. Your student asks:

Q: **Бал байна уу?** Do you have a pen?

A: **Байхгүй.** Don't. (No.)

Байхгүй байна

A student in class approached you. You think you have pens in your backpack. Your student asks:

- Q: Бал байна уу? Do you have a pen?
A: Байгаа. Өө, байхгүй байна! Do. Oh, don't! (Yes. Oh, no, I don't!)

БАЙГАА/ БИЙ is used in two general ways:

- To talk about a person or thing that cannot be seen at the time of questioning. It has the sense of checking something out. The question is directed to a person that is in some way connected to the person or thing in question.
- The inquirer wants to make sure the person being questioned still has something (i.e., that it hasn't been used up, sold out, or forgotten).

Note: Speakers often use байна in the place of байгаа/ бий, but using байна can be slightly less polite as it puts the emphasis on wanting something now. Бий can also be used in place of байгаа, although it is less common.

- Q: Сувдаа байгаа / бий юу? Is Suvdaa there?
A: Байгаа / бий. Here. (Yes.)
A: Байхгүй. Not here. (No.)

- Q: Ном байгаа / бий юу? Is there a book?
A: Байгаа / бий. Is. (Yes.)
A: Байхгүй. Not here. (No.)

- Q: Бат гэртээ байгаа юу? Bat at home is? Is Bat at home?
A: Байхгүй. No.

БАЙДАГ / БАЙДАГГҮЙ

Байдаг is the positive present continuous form of байх, while байдаггүй is the negative present continuous tense. Use these verbs when speaking about how something often, or usually, is or is not. Байдаг / байдаггүй are also used to talk about something that is always or nearly always the case.

- A questioner wants to know the address of a person, or the permanent location of a building or something else.

- Q: Дэлгүүр хаана байдаг вэ? Where is a store?
A: Сумын төвд байдаг. In the soum's center.

- A questioner wants some habitual information about a person or thing.

- Q: Дэлгүүрт загас байдаг уу? Does the store have fish?
A: Байдаг / байдаггүй. Yes / No.

- Q: Бат гэртээ байдаг уу? Is Bat (usually) at home?
A: Байдаг. Is. (Yes, he is.)

Lesson 2

Шинэ үг New Words

Би	I (subject)
Миний	My (adjective)
Намайг	Me (direct object)
Та	You (subject)
Таны	Your (adjective)
Таныг	You (direct object)
Энэ	This (is)
Нэр	Name
Найз	Friend
Хэн	Who
Гэдэг	Am/is/are called
Танилцах	Be acquainted (to meet someone)

Dialogue

Оюунаа: Сайн байна уу?
 София: Сайн. Сайн байна уу та?
 Оюунаа: Сайн. Чиний нэр хэн бэ?
 София: Миний нэр София. Таны нэр хэн бэ?
 Оюунаа: Оюунаа.

* * *

Жон: Танилцъя. Намайг Жон гэдэг.
 Таныг хэн гэдэг вэ?
 Гэрэл: Намайг Гэрэл гэдэг.

* * *

Мөөгий: Таны нэрийг хэн гэдэг вэ?
 Катя: Миний нэрийг Катя гэдэг.

When Americans first meet each other, they say “Nice to meet you.” Mongolians don’t say anything like this in the beginning of the conversation. People usually say it at the end of the conversation. On American movies dubbed into Mongolian, they may translate this phrase as “Сайхан Танилцлаа.” However, this phrase is not common among many Mongolians.

Cultural Note



PRONOUNS (SINGULAR FORM):

Personal pronouns:		Possessive pronouns:		Objective pronouns:	
Subjective pronoun		Adjective pronoun		Direct object	
/Nominative case/		/Genitive case/		/Accusative case/	
I	Би	My	Миний	Me	Намайг
You	Чи Та	Your	Чиний	You	Чамайг
She	Тэр	Her	Түүний	Her	Түүнийг
He	Тэр	His	Түүний	Him	Түүнийг
It	Энэ	Its (this)	Түүний	It (this)	Түүнийг
We	Бид	Our	бидний	Us	биднийг
You	Та нар	Your	Та нарын	You	та нарыг
They	тэд	Their	тэдний	Them	тэднийг

In Mongolian language, the third person singular is not distinguished by its gender (he or she) like in English. However, it is possible to specify the sex of the third person by adding “man” or “woman”.

Тэр (эрэгтэй)
 That man/ he

Тэр (эмэгтэй)
 That woman/ she

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. ASKING FOR NAMES

There are three ways to ask for someone's name. Any way is common in both formal and informal conversation.

1. You can use the verb **гэх** (to be called/ to call / to say) in the present continuous tense (iterative verbal noun) **гэдэг**. You have seen the present continuous tense of the verb **байх**: **байдаг**. **Гэдэг** uses the accusative **-г** ending when dealing with names. (Accusative case in Mongolia equals a direct object in English.)

Таныг	хэн	гэдэг	вэ?
You (acc)	who	called	question particle

Намайг	Жон	гэдэг.
Me (acc)	John	called.

2. You can say your name without a verb, in the genitive (possessive) case.

Чиний	нэр	хэн	бэ?
Your (gen)	name	who	question particle

Миний	нэр	София.
My (gen)	name	Sofia.

3. You can say your name in a combination of the accusative and genitive cases with **гэдэг**.

Тэд нарын	нэрийг	хэн	гэдэг	вэ?
Their (gen)	name (acc)	who	called	question particle
Тэд нарын	нэрийг	Рони, Сувдаа	гэдэг.	
Their (gen)	name (acc)	Ronnie, Suvdaa	called.	

2. ВЭ? AND БЭ?

ВЭ? AND БЭ? are question particles. They are used in sentences that have question words like who (**хэн**) or what (**юу**). They are not used in yes/no questions.

Generally, **бэ** is used after **м**, **в**, **л**, and **н**: **Хэн бэ? Энэ хэний ном бэ?** (Who's there? Whose book is this?) and **вэ** is used after everything else: **Юу вэ? Тэр хэний ус вэ?** (What's this? Whose water is that?)

Note: After the word **байна**, the question particle **вэ** is dropped in colloquial speech. For example, **сонин юу байна (вэ)?** has the question word **юу** but no question particle is used because the **вэ** is dropped.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Fill in the missing words in the dialogue. Орхигдсон үгийг нөх.

- Сайн _____?
- _____. Та _____ байна уу?
- Сайн. Таны _____ хэн бэ?
- _____ нэр _____.
- Таныг хэн _____ вэ?
- Намайг _____ гэдэг.
- Баяртай!
- _____ !

Exercise 2. Crossword puzzle. Үгийн сүлжээг бөглө.

1. A common way to greet people.
2. "Peaceful" is response to the question, "What's new?"
3. The expression for thanks
4. Third person singular
5. The object form of the personal pronoun ТА.
6. The object form of the personal pronoun БИ.
7. The possessive form of БИ.

1				Б						
				2	А					
				3	Я					
				4	Р					
					Т					
				6	А					
7					Й					

Exercise 3. Write the correct one. Зөвийг сонгож бич.

1. Миний ог намайг? _____ нэр Дулам.
2. Түүний ог түүнийг? Энэ миний найз. _____ Саран гэдэг.
3. Тэрний ог тэрийг? _____ нэрийг Болормаа гэдэг.
4. Таны ог таныг? _____ хэн гэдэг вэ?
5. Чиний ог чамайг? _____ нэр хэн бэ?

Exercise 4. Read the short dialogues, find mistakes and correct them. Харилцан яриаг уншаад алдааг олж зас.

1. Сайн байна вэ? Миний нэр Болдмаа. Таныг нэр хэн үү?
Би Бат гэдэг.
2. Тэр хэн гэдэг вэ?
Тэр нэр Мари.
3. Сайн уу, Гэрлээ. Сонин юу байн уу?
Дажгүй ээ, тайван.
4. Сайн байна уу?
Юмгүй.
Сонин юу байна?
Сайн.

Lesson 3

Шинэ үг

New Words

Өчигдөр	Yesterday
Хаана	Where
Хаанаас	Where from
Аль	Which
Сайхан	Good/well/nice
Ямар	What kind of
Харин чи/та	And you
Үндэстэн	Nationality
Америк	America
Хот	City
Муж	State
Мэдэх	To know
Амрах	To rest
Амарсан	Rested
Ирэх	To come
Ирсэн	Came
Мэдэх үү?	Do/does know?
Мэдэхгүй	Don't/doesn't know

Dialogue

Туяа: Сайн уу? Сайхан амарсан уу?

Жон: Сайхан. Сайхан амарсан уу?

Туяа: Өө, сайхан амарсан.

* * *

Багш: Сайн байцгаана уу? Сайхан амарцгаасан уу?

Оюутнууд: Сайхан. Та сайхан амарсан уу?

Багш: Сайхан амарсан.

* * *

Дорж: Сайн байна уу?

Жон: Сайн. Сайн байна уу? Танилцъя. Намайг Жон гэдэг. Таны нэрийг хэн гэдэг вэ?

Дорж: Миний нэрийг Дорж гэдэг. Чи хаанаас ирсэн бэ?

Жон: Би Америкаас ирсэн. Харин та?

Дорж: Би Улаанбаатараас ирсэн. Чи Америкийн аль хотоос ирсэн бэ?

Жон: Би Чикагогоос ирсэн.

Дорж: Чи монгол хэл мэдэх үү?

Жон: Би монгол хэл бага зэрэг мэднэ. Та англи хэл мэдэх үү?

Дорж: Өө, би мэдэхгүй.

Жон: Та ямар хэл мэдэх вэ?

Дорж: Би орос хэл сайн мэднэ.

When addressing a large group of people, it is possible to use a plural conjugation by adding -цгаа⁴. It is not as common in colloquial speech, but it can be heard in: “Сайн байцгаана уу?” and “Сайхан амарцгаасан уу?”.



хэн
хэл
энэ
тэр

хаана
хаанаас
жаахан
сайхан

мэдэх
мэдэх үү?
мэдэхгүй
мэднэ

Орос
Монгол
Солонгос
Англи

Phonetic Drill

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. THE ABLATIVE CASE:

-аас⁴ is used to show movement from a place and person. It is also used for talking about the time something begins, when giving time durations.

Subject	Place + аас ⁴	Predicate
Би I	Америкаас America + from	ирсэн came (I came from America)
Тэр He	хотоос city + from	ирсэн came (He came from a city)

ХААНААС is a question word. It is formed by the question word хаана (where) + -аас⁴. It means literally where from, or from where.

Who	where + from	came	question particle
Та/ Чи Би	хаанаас Америкаас	ирсэн ирсэн.	бэ?
Та нар/ Тэд нар Тэд нар	хаанаас Солонгосоос	ирсэн ирсэн.	бэ?

* When -аас⁴ is added to words ending with a long vowel (-аа, -ээ, -уу, -ээ, -оо) or diphthong (-ай, эй, ой, ий) Г is inserted for people, Н is inserted for things.
For example: дүү+ г +ээс (from a brother), ширээ+ н +ээс (from a table)

If a word has	Case ending	Examples	English translation
А, У, Я, Ё, Ю	- аас	Дархан-аас, Америк-аас	from Darkhan. from America
О	- оос	Хот-оос Монгол-оос	from a city, from Mongolia
Э, Ү, И, Е	- ээс	Гэр-ээс Дэлгүүр-ээс	from home from a store
Ө	- өөс	Хөвсгөл-өөс Хөдөө(н)-өөс*	from Khovsgol from the countryside



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Ask your friends what their name is and where they came from using the following pictures. Write the answers afterwards. Найзаасаа түүнийг хэн гэдэг, хаанаас ирснийг зураг ашиглан асуугаарай. Дараа нь хариултыг бич.

Q: Түүний нэр хэн бэ? / Түүнийг хэн гэдэг вэ?

A: Түүний нэр Жон.

Q: Тэр хаанаас ирсэн бэ?

A: Тэр Америкаас ирсэн. Тэр Америк хүн.

Q: Тэр ямар хэл мэдэх вэ?

A: Тэр испани хэл сайн мэднэ.



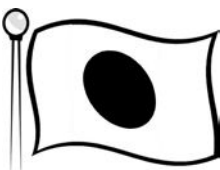
Америк



Монгол



Орос



Япон

Exercise 2. Чи ямар² хэл мэдэх вэ?

Take turns asking a partner what language they know based off of the languages listed. Write down the answers afterwards. Үгсийг ашиглан бие биенээсээ ямар хэл мэддэг талаар асуугаад хариултыг бич

If you see a question word followed by a superscript 2 that means that when spoken, the question word is repeated twice. This is not an indication of the vowel harmony rule. Repeating a question word twice means the speaker expects more than one answer, or is curious.

Q: Чи ямар² хэл мэдэх вэ?

A: Би герман, орос хэл мэднэ.

1. Korean, Spanish
2. Japanese
3. Turkish
4. French, Arabic
5. Mongolian, Italian
6. Chinese

Exercise 3. Match the Mongolian words with the correct English words. Тохируул.

Би	My	Намайг	He
Тэр (эмэгтэй)	You	Тэр (эрэгтэй)	You
Чиний	Your	Таныг	You (direct object)
Түүний	His/her(s)	Чи	This/it
Та	I	Түүнийг	Me
Миний	She	Энэ	Him

There are two words used to describe nationality: **үндэстэн** and **ястан**. **Үндэстэн** is used to refer directly to nationality, while **ястан** refers to a type of nationality passed down patrilineally (through the father) in the bone (**яс**). So, this means that if your father is Mongolian and your mother is American, the child will be recognized (within Mongolia) as Mongolian. However, if the father is American and the mother is Mongolian, the child will be termed American by most Mongolians. This also applies to the many ethnic groups in Mongolia. If someone's mother is Buryiat but the father is Khalkh, the child will be considered Khalkh.

Cultural Note



UNIT ONE EXIT PASS

Pass One. Complete the dialogue. Харилцан яриаг гүйцээ.

Макс: Сайн _____ та?

Оюунтуяа: _____.

Макс: Уучлаарай, _____ нэр хэн бэ?

Оюунтуяа: Оюунтуяа.

Амраа: _____ байцгаана _____?

Оюунтуяа: Хөөе сайн уу? Сайхан _____?

Амраа: Сайхан _____. Танилцъя. _____ Амраа гэдэг. _____ хэн _____ вэ?

Макс: _____ Макс гэдэг.

Амраа: Чи _____ ирсэн бэ?

Оюунтуяа: Макс Америкаас _____.

Макс: Тийм, би _____ хүн.

Амраа: Тийм үү? Чи монголоор ямар сайн ярьдаг юм бэ! Чи ямар ямар _____ вэ?

Макс: Би _____, _____ хэл _____. Та нар англи хэл _____?

Оюунтуяа: Би бага _____.

Амраа: Би мэдэхгүй. Би _____ хэл мэднэ.

Pass Two. Complete the dialogue. Харилцан яриаг гүйцээ.

Жэссика: Мотоэ, нааш ир. Тэр эрэгтэй хэн _____?

Мотоэ: Түүнийг Юки _____.

Жэссика: Тэр хаанаас _____?

Мотоэ: Японоос _____.

Жэссика: _____ хүн үү?

Мотоэ: Харин тийм. Бид хоёр ЖАЙКА–д ажилладаг.

Жэссика: Би Сү-Хён-тай танилцсан.

Мотоэ: Тэр Солонгосоос _____ үү?

Жэссика: Тийм, _____ хүн. Тэр КОЙКА–д ажилладаг.

Мотоэ: Сү-Хён ямар хэл _____?

Жэссика: Тэр англи, япон _____ сайн _____. Монгол хэл _____ зэрэг _____ Чи _____ мэдэх вэ?

Мотоэ: Би юу? Би монгол, англи, араб _____ сайн _____.

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. A CRASH COURSE ON MONGOLIAN VERBS

Infinitives: Mongolian verb infinitives always have a vowel + x ending. The vowel is decided by vowel harmony. For example:

Masculine Infinitive: амрах, явах, уулзах

Feminine Infinitive: идэх, ирэх, мэдэх

Verb stems ending in ж, ч, and ш take the –их: унших, бичих, баяжих,

Stem/Root: Drop the –x from the infinitive form to make the stem.

Below, we've compiled some lists of verbs that will be fairly common for you to use, mostly during your time in PST. The examples have been conjugated into various tenses to reflect how you will most likely use them. Though you have not seen all of these tenses yet, we hope that the functionality of these charts will exceed any frustration you may experience at having this new information put upon you.

Common verbs	Example Жишээ нь	Translation
явах (to go)	Би Дархан явна.	I will go to Darkhan.
өгөх (to give)	Надад цай өгөөч.	Give me tea.
авах (to take)	Би кофе авсан.	I took(bought) coffee.
суух (to sit)	Би найзындаа суусан.	I sat at my friend's (home).
уух (to drink)	Би тараг уусан.	I drank yogurt.
идэх (to eat)	Би боов идсэн.	I ate boov (a form of pastry).

Summertime Activities	Example Жишээ нь	Translation
сэлэх (to swim)	Би голд сэлсэн.	I swam in the river.
тоглох (to play)	Чи сагсан бөмбөг тоглох уу?	Will you play basketball?
авирах (to climb)	Тэр модонд авирсан.	S/He climbed a tree.
гүйх (to run)	Би сургууль руу гүйсэн.	I ran to school.

Classroom Verbs	Example Жишээ нь	Translation
харах (to look, to see)	Ийшээ хараарай! Над руу хараарай!	Look here! Look at me!
унших (to read)	Ном уншаарай!	Read (your) book!
бичих (to write)	Хоёр өгүүлбэр бичээч.	Write two sentences.
ойлгох (to understand)	Чи ойлгосон уу?	Did you understand?
сонсох (to listen)	Сонс! Сонсоорой!	Listen! Please Listen!

2. SIMPLE FUTURE AND SIMPLE PAST

Simple Future Tense: Ирээдүй Цаг

To form the simple present tense, drop the –x to form the verb stem. Then add –на⁴ for positive simple future tense, and –ах⁴гүй for negative future tense. Questions in the positive future tense are not conjugated and remain in the infinitive form, while the negative future tense is conjugated.

Одоо унших уу?	Will you read now?	Одоо уншихгүй юү?	Will you not read now?
Уншина.	(I will) Read.	Уншина.	(I will) Read.
Уншихгүй.	(I will) Not read.	Уншихгүй.	(I will) Not read.

Write the simple present tense for the following verbs. Үйл үгийг ирээдүй цагт бич.

Verb Infinitive	Positive Form	Negative Form
Байх	байна	байхгүй
Унших		
Бичих		
Идэх		
Ирэх		
Мэдэх		
Уух		
Асуух		
Өгөх		

Simple Past Tense: Өнгөрсөн Цаг

To form the simple past tense, drop the –x to form the verb stem. Then add –сан⁴ for positive form, and –ааргүй⁴ for negative form. Questions in the past tense are conjugated.

-сэн	-сон	-сөн
Тэр Дарханаас ирсэн.	Чи өчигдөр хөгжим сонссон уу?	Хэн ном багшид өгсөн бэ?
He came from Darkhan	Did you listen to music yesterday?	Who gave the teacher the book?
-ээгүй	-оогүй	-өөгүй
Бид нар бууз хийгээгүй.	Сонсоогүй.	Хэн ч өгөөгүй.
We didn't make buuz.	(I) didn't listen.	No one gave the book.

Write the verbs in past tense and make sentences using “Өчигдөр”. Үйл үгийг өнгөрсөн цагт бичээд өгүүлбэр зохио.

Унших –	уншсан.	Би өчигдөр ном уншсан.	Би өчигдөр ном уншаагүй.
Хийх -	.....	.....	.....
Явах -	.....	.....	.....
Идэх -	.....	.....	.....
Уулзах -	.....	.....	.....

Ч particle

The ч particle can be combined with question words to create a negative form. When using the ч particle in the negative form, the verbs must also be conjugated negatively. For example,

Хэн ч	Nobody/ no one	Хэн ч хэлээгүй.	Nobody spoke.
Хаашаа ч	Nowhere	Би хаашаа ч яваагүй.	I didn't go anywhere.
Юу ч	Nothing	Тэр юу ч идээгүй.	He / she didn't eat.

UNIT 2: FAMILY

- Giving and receiving information about someone's job
- Asking and answering personal questions
- Family members
- Numbers

Learning Strategies from Jake Borst, CYD, M24

Carrying a pocket-sized notebook. When having a conversation with a teacher/community member and coming across a word or phrase, write it down or ask them too and then look it up later. Excellent vocab builder and exposure to memorizing colloquial phrases.

Immersing yourself in the musical culture. You will undoubtedly be asked to sing a song at some point in your service, not only is learning songs a good idea for building those relationships with Mongolian friends but an incredible way to learn the language. Getting help with pronunciation, while learning the content of those songs is also an added benefit.

Labeling things in the ger/apartment and office at work. If it's a shared work space, having the English equivalents for CP's who are learning English. With those words listed, writing the verbs that correlate with that item, i.e. Bed; sleeping, laying down, relaxing. Table; studying, eating, reading. Fridge; keeping food, freezing. Door; knocking, open, closing, etc.



Lesson 1

Dialogue

Шинэ үг New Words

Хэн?	Who?
Мөн	Am/is/are
Биш	Not
Манай	Our
Танай	Your
Гэр бүл/ гэрийнхэн	Family
Манайхан	Our family
Танайхан	Your family
Хамаатан	Relative
Ээж	Mother
Аав	Father
Эхнэр	Wife
Нөхөр	Husband
Нохой	Dog
Хүүхэд	Child
Ах	Older brother
Эгч	Older sister
Дүү	Younger brother Younger sister
Эмээ	Grandmother
Өвөө	Grandfather
Хүргэн	Son-in-law
Бэр	Daughter-in-law
Найз охин	Girlfriend
Найз хүү/залуу	Boyfriend
Найз	Friend
Авах	To get, take
Харин энэ?	How about this?
Санах	To miss/remember

Дорж: Энэ манай гэрийнхэн.

Жон: Энэ хэн бэ?

Дорж: Энэ манай ээж.

Жорж: Танай ээжийг хэн гэдэг вэ?

Дорж: Манай ээжийг Дулам гэдэг.

* * *

Жон: Энэ чиний дүү мөн үү?

Дорж: Биш. Манай ах.

Жон: Харин энэ хүн хэн бэ?

Дорж: Манай ахын эхнэр.

* * *

Сүхбат: Манай найз, сайн уу?

Френк: Сайн. Сонин юу байна, Сүхээ?

Сүхбат: Тайван даа. Тэр чиний нохой
мөн үү?

Френк: Мөн!

Сүхбат: Өө, чи хаанаас авсан бэ?

Френк: Би Германаас авсан.

Collective meanings for plural pronouns

*ИЙН+ХАН⁴. The plural form of possessive pronouns has a collective meaning of people who have something in common or who somehow belong together (relatives, classmates, etc)

гэр + ийн + хэн = гэрийнхэн
групп + ийн + хэн = группийнхэн
сум + ын + хан = сумынхан
сургууль + ийн + хан = сургуулийнхан
манай + хан = манайхан

People who live in one family
People who are in the same group
People who live in the same soum
People who study/ work at the same school
We (depending on the context it can mean
“my family, my class, my group,” etc.)

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. ХЭН is translated in English differently depending on the question.

Таны нэр хэн бэ?	Your name who? (What is your name?)
Та хэн бэ?	You who? (Who are you?)

2. ГЭДЭГ requires the accusative case (direct object) ending: -ЫГ, ИЙГ, Г

- ыг is added to nouns with masculine vowels: аав + ыг, ах + ыг
- ийг is added to nouns with feminine vowels: ээж +ийг, эгч +ийг
- г is added after long vowels and diphthongs: эмээ +г, өвөө +г, нохой +г

3. THE NEGATIVE PARTICLE: БИШ

- In Mongolian the negative is expressed with two particles: үгүй and биш.

Энэ ном уу?	This book? (Is this a book?)
Үгүй, энэ ном биш.	No, this book not. (No, this is not a book.)
Энэ дэвтэр.	This notebook. (This is a notebook)
Энэ Баатар уу?	This Baatar? (Is this Baatar?)
Үгүй, энэ Баатар биш.	No, this Baatar not. (No, this is not Baatar.)
Энэ Бат.	This Bat. (This is Bat).

- The form үгүй is independent and always appears at the beginning of a sentence. Үгүй expresses absolute negation, nonexistence, or something not achieved.
- The form –гүй is added to the word, negating the meaning of it. For example: дүү + гүй, which would mean “no younger siblings.”

4. THE POSITIVE PARTICLE: МӨН.

It is used to clarify answers to questions; thus, it always follows a noun and is used only for yes/no questions.

Энэ танай гэр мөн үү?	Мөн мөн, энэ манай гэр.
This your ger*?	Yes, this my ger.
(IS this your home?)	(Yes, it is my home.)
Тийм, энэ манай гэр мөн.	Мөн мөн.
Yes, this my ger.	Yes
(Yes, this IS my home.)	(Yes, it IS)

Манайх биш.
No, this my ger not.
(No, it is not my home.)

*Note—Mongolians use the word ger to mean home or house.

5. THE GENITIVE CASE ending: -ын, -ийн, -н, -ы, and – ний

The Genitive Case ending: -ын, -ийн, -н, -ы, and – ний indicates possession, as expressed in English by the preposition “of” and the possessive suffix “ ‘s”. The spelling rule is:

If a word ends with		Examples
Ж, Ч, Г, И, Ш, Ы	-ийн	тавь-тавийн, анги –ангийн, багш-багшийн,
Н *note some words that end with Н also have a “Г” inserted	-ий	хүний, хэний
	-ы	зааны, оюутны
	-(г)ийн	*саван(г)ийн, байшин(г)ийн
Other consonants except Н	-ын	найзын, самбарын, аавын, номын
	-ийн	эхийн, жилийн
Long vowels	-ны	ямааны, хашааны
	-ний	ширээний, өрөөний
Diphthongs	-н	гахайн, толгойн, оройн
Single Vowel	-ийн	өнгө- өнгийн
	-ын/ны	хана- ханын, аяга- аяганы
For people’s names ending in a long vowel or foreign names with a long vowel sound.	-гийн	Руцjee’s- Пүүжээгийн Christy’s- Кристигийн Tommy’s- Томигийн Grandpa’s- Өвөөгийн



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Listen repeat and practice. Сонсоод давтаж хэлээрэй.

ЭНЭ	ХЭН	ХЭДЭН	ТАВ	ТАВЬ	ДУУ	ДҮҮ
АХ	ААВ	ААВТАЙ	ХОР	ХОРЬ	УС	ҮС
ЭХ	ЭЭЖ	ЭЭЖТЭЙ	ХАР	ХАРЬ	МОН	МӨН
ЭМ	ЭМЭЭ	ЭМЭЭТЭЙ	БОЛ	БОЛЬ	БИ	БИЙ

Exercise 2. Change nouns into collective meaning pronouns after reading the above grammar. Нэр үгсийг олон тоо болго.

1. Өрөө _____
2. Анги _____
3. Ажил _____
4. Аймаг _____
5. Баг _____
6. Сургууль _____
7. Нутаг _____

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences. Өгүүлбэрүүдийг гүйцээ.

1. Миний ээжийн ээж миний _____
2. Миний ээжийн аав миний _____
3. Миний аавын эхнэр миний _____
4. Миний ээжийн нөхөр миний _____
5. Миний охины нөхөр миний _____
6. Миний хүүгийн хүү миний _____
7. Миний аавын ах миний _____
8. Миний ээжийн ах миний _____

Exercise 4. Mark the correct boxes to change the nouns to their possessive forms. ЗӨВИЙГ СОНГОЖ ТЭМДЭГЛЭ.

Noun	-ийн	-ын	-ий	-ы	-н	-ны	-ний	-гийн
Хаан				х(Хааны)				
Сургууль	х							
Машин								
Зураг								
Сараа								
Загас								
Малгай								
Охин								
Хаалга								
Жони								
Нохой								
Жил								
Спорт								
Мери								
Сэрээ								

Mongolians have a very different system than Americans when talking about family members. This holds true especially when talking about brothers and sisters. The Mongolian system is an “age system” where the American system is more of a “gender system.”

For example, in Mongolian, you would say, “Би нэг ахтай, нэг эгчтэй, нэг дүүтэй.”

This means I have one older brother, one older sister, and one younger sibling.

Notice that we don’t know whether the sibling is a boy or a girl. Mongolians only specify gender when talking about older siblings. The word “дүү” could mean younger brother or younger sister. Therefore, a logical follow-up question in Mongolian would be, “Дүү чинь эмэгтэй дүү юү, эрэгтэй дүү юү?” “Is it a younger brother or younger sister?”

In English we say, “Do you have any brothers or sisters?” We might respond, “I have one brother and two sisters. The follow-up question might then be, “Are they older or younger?” This follow-up question would never need to be asked in Mongolian because their words describing brothers and sisters specify age, whereas our words in English do not specify age.

Cultural Note



The words **ах**, **эгч**, and **дүү** (older brother, older sister, and younger sibling) are used very generally in colloquial Mongolian. For example, even though there are words for aunt and uncle, Mongolians don't really use them in everyday speech. They would call all uncles, "ах," and all aunts "эгч." They would call all older male cousins "ах." They would call all older female cousins "эгч." They would call any relative that was younger than them a "дүү."

Mongolians call even non-relatives "ах, эгч, and дүү." For example, a Mongolian customer in a restaurant would call the younger waitress, "МИНИЙ ДҮҮ" (my younger sibling). A young child in the street would call an older boy or man "ах" (older brother). Mongolians will even use these terms to describe friends of theirs if they are of a different age.

Cultural Note



Calling people/parents, "Ах аа" "Эгч ээ" "Ээж ээ" "Аав аа" "Найз аа" etc.

The –аа⁴ particle is used to show relation or to call someone who is expected to respond.

Family Members

In Mongolia it is very important to know your relation to the person you are speaking to, as seen in the use of **та** and **чи** even among family members. These added syllables are used not only for respect but to emphasize the speaker's relation to the person addressed. You should use the following words to address your family members:

Ээж ээ	Mother
Аав аа	Father
Ах аа / Агаа	Older brother
Эгч ээ / Эгээ / Аниа	Older sister

Friends & Relatives

This particle is also used when addressing friends and older relatives. You can address your friends as **ах аа** or **эгч ээ**, or **найз аа**. You can also simply add the –аа⁴ to the end of the person's name to make it a more familiar, friendly address.

Call and Response

The –аа⁴ particle is also used to gain attention from the person you are calling. For example, calling for a teacher you don't only say **багш!** You would call out **багш аа!** Or, for a waiter/waitress, **зөөгч өө!**

Lesson 2

Dialogue

Шинэ үг New Words

Тийм	Yes
Үгүй	No
Хэзээ	When
Хэдэн	How many?
Хэдэн настай?	How many years old?
Миний	My
Маань	Our
Дүүтэй	Have/has a younger Brother/sister
Дүүгүй	Don't/doesn't have Younger brother/sister
Гэрлэх	To marry
Гэрлэсэн	Got married
Хүнтэй суусан	Got married
Гэрлээгүй	Didn't get married
Хүнтэй суугаагүй	Didn't get married
Салсан	Divorced/separated /broke up
Дахиж гэрлэсэн	Remarried
Нас	Age (years old)
Он	Year
Хэдэн он	What year
Айлын ганц хүүхэд	Only one child
Айлын том	Oldest of the family
Айлын бага	Youngest of the family
Төрсөн	Born
Төрсөн дүү	Blood related younger Sibling

Нараа: Чи дүүтэй юү?

Сюзан: Үгүй.

Нараа: Чи ах, эгчтэй юү?

Сюзан: Ахтай.

Нараа: Ах чинь хэдэн настай вэ?

Сюзан: Манай ах 30-н (гучин) настай.

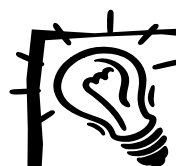
* * *

Сюзан: Ах чинь гэрлэсэн үү?

Нараа: Аанхаа, гэрлэсэн.

Сюзан: Хэдэн онд хүнтэй суусан бэ?

Нараа: 1995 онд.



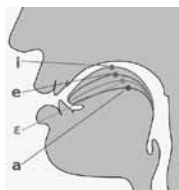
These are adjectives of quantity with no specific numbers. Or if you don't want to bother counting things, use these.

Олон - Many

Зөндөө - Bunches

Цөөхөн - A few/some

Бүх/бүгд - All



Phonetic Drill

ээж	ээжтэй	ээждээ	ах	ахтай	ахдаа	хор	хорь
эгч	эгчтэй	эгчдээ	аав	аавтай	аавдаа	тав	тавь
эмээ	эмээтэй	эмээдээ	өвөө	өвөөтэй	өвөөдөө	хар	харь

TOO (NUMBERS)

0.	Тэг/ нойл	10.	Арав
1.	Нэг	20.	Хорь
2.	Хоёр	30.	Гуч
3.	Гурав	40.	Дөч
4.	Дөрөв	50.	Тавь
5.	Тав	60.	Жар
6.	Зургаа	70.	Дал
7.	Долоо	80.	Ная
8.	Найм	90.	Ер
9.	Ес	100.	Зуу
10.	Арав	1000.	Мянга
11.	Арван нэг	1000000.	Сая
23.	Хорин гурав		
68.	Жаран найм		

When Mongolians meet foreigners for the first time, they usually ask many questions out of curiosity. These questions may seem very personal; things like your age, if you are married, or have children, for example. To Americans, these types of questions can be very forward, but are quite common for Mongolians.

In regards to separation or divorce, the opposite can often times be true. Many Mongolians may seem more private or shy about discussing their divorce or break-ups. And Americans will, at times, be more open about sharing these failed relationships.

Cultural Note



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Match the numbers. Тохируул.

Зуу	25	three	ер
Арван нэг	60	twelve	нэг
Жар	1 000 000	nine	долоо
Гучин ес	4	hundred	таван зуу
Ер	11	five hundred	ес
Хорин тав	90	seven	арван мянга
Дөрөв	100	one	гурав
Зургаа	39	ninety	зуу
Сая	6	ten thousand	арван хоёр

Exercise 2. Тэр хэдэн настай вэ? (How old is he/she?)

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|----------------|-------|
| 1. Туяа – 40 | Туяа дөчин настай. | 4. Чимгээ – 37 | _____ |
| 2. Нараа – 23 | _____ | 5. Дулам – 50 | _____ |
| 3. Галаа – 10 | _____ | 6. Баяраа – 6 | _____ |

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. THE QUESTION PARTICLES ЮУ? ЮУ?

The question particles ЮУ? ЮУ? are used in questions that have no question word, just like the particles уу? үү?

Юу and юу are used after a word that ends with a diphthong (ай, ой, эй, үй, уй)

Чи дүүтэй юу? Чи ахтай юу?

or long vowels (аа, оо, ээ, үү, уу) according to vowel harmony.

Энэ ширээ юу? Энэ Нараа юу?

Don't confuse the particle юу with the question word ЮУ? (what?).

The question particles are placed at the end of yes/no questions.

The comitative case ending –тай³ is used for the verb “to have” in this case.

2. THE COMITATIVE CASE ENDING –ТАЙ³

It can also mean “with.” The form -гүй is used for negation (“doesn't have” or “without”).

Subject (S)	Object (O) + тай ³	S O + гүй
S	have/has O	S don't/doesn't have O
Би ах + тай.	I brother-with. (I have a brother.)	Би ах + гүй I brother-without. (I don't have a brother.)
Тэр өвөө + тэй.	He/she grandpa-with. (He has a grandpa)	Тэр өвөө + гүй. He/she grandpa- without. (He doesn't have a grandpa)

3. POSSESSIVE PARTICLES:

In Mongolian there is a particle that is similar to the possessive adjective. The differences are that this particle emphasizes relationship rather than possession and it follows the noun.

There is no comparable grammar in English. Generally, they are interchangeable in most cases, but not interchangeable in certain cases.

минь	my / миний:	нохой минь (my dog)
чинь	your /чиний:	ээж чинь, нохой чинь (your mom, your dog)
тань	your / таны:	аав тань (your father)
нь	his, hers, its / түүний:	аав нь (his/her father)
маань	our / манай is only used to talk about jointly owned objects:	манай сум

4. WRITING TWO AND MORE THAN TWO DIGIT NUMBERS:

For numbers with two or more digits, the ending –н is added except to 1 and 2. Also all numbers, except 1, 2, and numbers that end with 2, have –н when they are in front of a noun.

1 -	нэг	нэг	нэг	төгрөг
11 -	арав + н	нэг	арван нэг	арван нэгэн төгрөг
25 -	хорь + н	тав	хорин тав	хорин таван төгрөг
600 -	зургаа + н	зуу	зургаан зуу	зургаан зуун доллар

5. 'YEAR' and THE DATE

In Mongolian there are three words used in specific situations for the English word “year”

a. **Нас** is translated as “years old”.

Би 23-н настай.	I 23 year-with. (I am 23 years old.)
2 сартай	2 months.

b. **Жил** is used to identify a number of years.

Би 3-н жил ажиллаж байна.	I three year working am. (I have been working for three years)
---------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

c. **Он** is used when identifying any specific date or time. It is used for answering the question “when?”

Одоо 2014-н он.	Би 1980-н онд төрсөн.
Now 2014 year.	I 1980 year born was.
(Now it is 2014.)	(I was born in 1980.)

d. For giving the date, the Mongolian structure is:

Year	month	day
2014-н оны	6-н сарын	4-н
(2014 year's 6th month's 4th.)		

6. BIRTHDAY

For giving your birthday, the Mongolian structure is:

Миний төрсөн өдөр зургаан сарын таван.
My birth day is June 5th.

Би зургаан сарын таванд төрсөн.

I June fifth on born was.
(I was born on June 5.)

Days of the week

Mongolians use two systems for referring to the days of the week. Timetables, newspapers and official publications use the Tibetan names. These names are often used for people too – naming them after the day on which they were born. The second system, used in everyday language, especially in speech, bases the names on numbers, with the exception of Saturday and Sunday. Monday through Friday are known as “first day through fifth day.” Saturday means “half good day” because it was a half working day. Sunday means “a whole good day” because it is a complete day off of work. In this system, Monday is the first day of the week, and calendars are arranged accordingly.

“Баасан” is the Tibetan name for Friday as well as a common name in Mongolia. Mongolian youth would sometimes use this as an excuse to go out and drink on a Friday night by telling their parents it is “Баасан ахын төрсөн өдөр”, meaning “brother Baasan’s birthday”. Nowadays it is common to hear it being joked about but still used as an excuse to drink.

Cultural Note



The Date

August -
Найман /наймдугаар сар

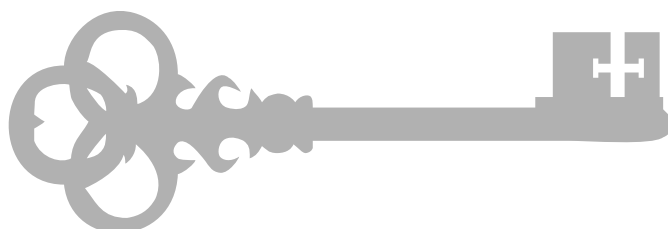
1st of August
Найман /наймдугаар сарын нэгэн

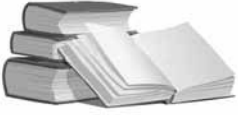
The first -
Нэгэн.

August 1st -
Найман /наймдугаар сарын нэгэн

In August -
Найман /наймдугаар сард

On August 1 -
Найман /наймдугаар сарын нэгэнд





PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Translate sentences into Mongolian. Орчуул.

1. I have 2 sisters.
2. My sister is not married.
3. She is 28.
4. Do you have a grandmother?
5. How old is she?
6. I have 500 tugriks.
7. My friend has a million dollars.
8. What's your brother's wife's name?
9. I don't have money.
10. He was married in 1998.

Exercise 2. Answer the questions. Асуултад хариул.

1. Чи хоёр ахтай юу?
2. Танай аавын нэр хэн бэ?
3. Аав чинь хэдэн настай вэ?
4. Чи эгчтэй юү?
5. Найзыг чинь хэн гэдэг вэ?

Exercise 3. Fill in the blank with the appropriate words for “year”(он, жил, нас) in the correct form. Тохирох үгийг бич.

1. Миний охин нэгтай.
2. Тэр 1965-нд төрсөн.
3. Би Улаанбаатарт хоёр амьдарна.
4. Сэнди 35-нтай.
5. Эмээ энэ сургуульд 15-н ажилласан.
6. Туяа 2004-нд коллеж төгссөн.

Exercise 4. Fill in the blanks using the suffixes дахь and дэх according to vowel harmony, then match these three columns. Дахь, дэх-ийн аль тохирохыг бич.

Mongolian	English	Tibetan
Нэг .....дэх..... (өдөр)	Friday	Пүрэв
Хоёр (өдөр)	Tuesday	Даваа
Гурав (өдөр)	Thursday	Баасан
Дөрөв (өдөр)	Monday	Мягмар
Тав (өдөр)	Wednesday	Лхагва
Хагас сайн (өдөр)	Saturday	Ням
Бүтэн сайн (өдөр)	Sunday	Бямба

*Note- An entire week is referred to as “долоо хоног”, and the weekend and vacations are usually called “амралтын өдөр”.

Exercise 5. Put the appropriate time frequency in the space of the sentences, use the tenses of the verbs to help. Дараах өгөгдсөн үгсийг ашиглан өгүүлбэрүүдийг гүйцээ.



ХЭЗЭЭ?

өнгөрсөн { долоо хоногт
даваа гаригт
бүтэн сайнд
сард
жил

ирэх { долоо хоногт
нэг дэх өдөр
хагас сайнд
сард
жил

1. Манай группийнхэн.....Монголд ирсэн.
2. Манай ээж..... хоол хийсэн.
3.бид нар Дархан явна.
4. Чином уншсан уу?
5.та идээгүй юү?
6. Танай аав.....Орос явах уу?
7. Чи манай эгчтэй.....утсаар ярих уу?
8. Бисайхан амраагүй.

Exercise 6. Match the correct months.

January	хоёр сар	July	найман сар
February	таван сар	August	арван нэгэн сар
March	зургаан сар	September	долоон сар
April	дөрвөн сар	October	есөн сар
May	гурван сар	November	арван сар
June	нэг сар	December	арван хоёр сар

Exercise 7. Хариул. Answer.

1. Чи Монголд хэдэн сар амьдрах (to live) вэ? _____
2. Жил хэдэн сартай вэ? _____
3. Уржигдар хэдэн байсан бэ? _____
4. Ах чинь хэдэн сард гэрлэсэн бэ? _____
5. Өнөөдөр хэдэн бэ? _____
6. Чи хэдэн онд төрсөн бэ? _____
7. Чи хэзээ Монголд ирсэн бэ? _____
8. Чи хэдэн сард төрсөн бэ? _____
9. Чиний төрсөн өдөр хэзээ вэ? _____

Lesson 3

Dialogue

Шинэ үг New Words

Хаана	Where
Танайх	Yours (your family)
Манайх	Ours (my family)
Мэргэжил	Job specialty
Эмч	Doctor
Багш	Teacher
Захирал	Director
Дарга	Boss/head of
Оюутан	University student
Сурагч	School pupil
Цагдаа	Policeman
Жижүүр	Guard /clerk/front desk
Жолооч	Driver
Тэтгэвэрт	Retired
Ажилгүй	Unemployed
Эмнэлэг	Hospital
Сургууль	School
Жил	Year
Хийх	To do/make
Төгсөх	To graduate
Ажиллах	To work

- Сараа: Чиний ах эгч юу хийдэг вэ?
Жэйси: Эгч багш, ах оюутан.
Сараа: Ах чинь хаана сурдаг вэ?
Жэйси: Манай ах мэргэжлийн сургуульд сурч байгаа*.
Сараа: Аан, юуны ангид сурдаг вэ?
Жэйси: Авто засварын анги.
Сараа: Тийм үү? Тэр хэзээ төгсөх вэ?
Жэйси: Арван сарын дараа.

* * *

- Боб: Танай эхнэр ямар мэргэжилтэй вэ?
Виктор: Тогооч.
Боб: Хаана ажилладаг вэ?
Виктор: Эмнэлэгт.
Боб: Тэр хэдэн жил ажиллаж байгаа* вэ?
Виктор: Хоёр жил.

*Questions regarding third parties are answered using байгаа because the third party is not visible, present, or engaging in the activity.



Энх тайвны корпус /ЭТК/
Peace Corps

Монгол дахь Энх тайвны корпусын сайн дурын ажилтан /СДА/
Mongolia Peace Corps Volunteer

Би Энх тайвны корпусын сайн дурын ажилтан.
I am a Peace Corps Volunteer.

Би Энх тайвны корпусд ажилладаг.
I work for Peace Corps.

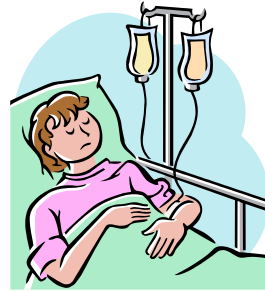
OCCUPATIONS



Эмнэлэг



Эмч



Өвчтөн



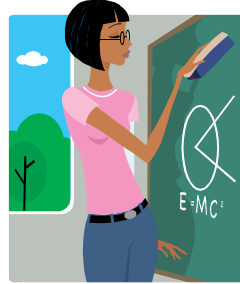
Сувилагч



Сургууль



Оюутан



Багш



Сурагч



Нийгмийн
Ажилтан



Малчин



Фермер



Засварчин



Нягтлан
бодогч



Үсчин



Цагдаа



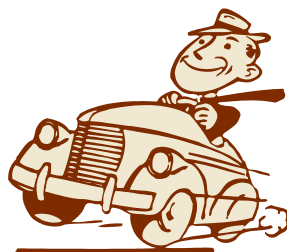
Зөөгч



Оёдолчин



Тогооч



Жолооч

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. ЧИН/ААЧ⁴/Ч/ГЧ.

When added to the noun or verb it illustrates they are a worker in that field or a person that does that action. Many activities are differentiated from their noun or verb forms by using that word, the subject of a person's career or hobby, and ending it with “-чин”, “-аач”, or “-ч”. For example, a repairman is referred to as “засварчин”, the noun “засвар” meaning repair. It also works with verbs, “зурах” meaning to draw or paint and “зураач” being an artist (notice the ending of “-аач” must follow the vowel harmony rule.) In most cases, the noun and verb are similar, for instance, “дуу” a song, “дуулах” to sing, and “дуучин” a singer. Sometimes just “ч” is added. For example, a “тогоо” refers to a cooking pot or wok, “тогооч” meaning a cook or chef. Some verbs also take the ‘гч’ ending to signify a worker. The verb ‘зөөх’ means to carry or to transport, and a ‘зөөгч’ is a waiter, waitress or carrier.

2. –ДАГ⁴.

The suffix– ДАГ⁴ is used to talk about an action that habitually takes place. (e.g., I walk home everyday).

For example:

ажиллах - ажилладаг
(to work - work / works)

The usage of this form is very similar to the present simple tense in English. This ending is added to the verb stem using the vowel harmony. This kind of ending is used in negative (-) and interrogative sentences.

(+)	+	-
Ажилл/ах/	ажилла +даг	ажилладаг + гүй
Ид/эх/	ид + дэг	иддэг + гүй
Өг/өх/	өг + дөг	өгдөг + гүй
Ор/ох/	ор + дог	ордог + гүй

3. –Ж/Ч БАЙНА.

Generally, this form is used to describe actions which are happening at the moment of speaking. For example: How long have you been working? (Хэдэн жил ажиллаж байна вэ?).

This tense is very similar to the present continuous tense in English.

Verb stem+ж байна.	Verb stem+ч байна уу/вэ?
Тэр ажиллаж байна.	Тэр амарч байна уу?
Тэр хоол идэж байна.	Тэр юу сурч байна вэ?

4. –Д/Т TO SHOW LOCATION, TIME, AND SPECIFY INDIRECT OBJECTS

–Д/Т is used to show location, time, and specify indirect objects, and a word with this ending answers the questions “where ‘хаана’”, when ‘хэзээ’”, to whom ‘хэнд’”, and for/to/in what ‘юунд’” depending on the noun and the verb. The rules for using these case endings are complex, but here are some general rules.

If a word ends with	Case ending	Examples	English Translations
A vowel or most consonants	-Д	Монголд сонинд	in Mongolia in the news
“Г, В, С, Р, К” (there are exceptions)	-Т	дэлгүүрт цагт гэрт Америкт	in the shop at ___ o'clock in the ger in America
“Д, Т, З, Ц”	-(single vowel) +Д	найзад сайдад	to the friend to the minister
“Ж, Ч, Ш”	-(single vowel “и”) +Д	багшид эмчид	to the teacher to the doctor
Some words take a vowel and an extra -Н	-(vowel harmony)+НД	усанд модонд цүнхэнд	in the water in the tree in the bag
People’s names	-Д	Аавд Баатараад Эмид	to Dad to Baataraa to Amy

Хаана? /where?/

Хэзээ ? /when?/

Хэнд ? /to whom?/

Юунд ? /what?/

сургуульд, эмнэлэгт, Улаанбаатарт

2005-н онд, 1-р сарын 7нд,

ахад, ээжид,

алиманд, сүүнд

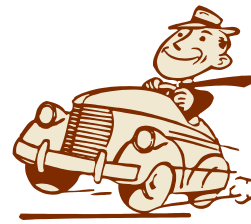
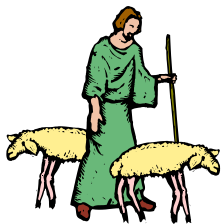
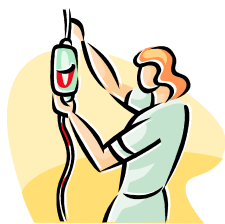
Mongolia has a high rate of unemployment, especially in the countryside. In soums, the only people who have jobs tend to be drivers, school workers, government office workers, post office workers, hospital workers, shopkeepers, and herders.

Being a driver in Mongolia can be a very lucrative position, and drivers tend to make more money than teachers. An employed Mongolian is never shy about the kind of work they do. They are usually happy that they have the opportunity to work.

Cultural Note



Exercise 1. Look at the pictures and name the jobs. Зурганд тохирох мэргэжлийн нэрийг бич.



Exercise 2. Unscramble these job words. Мэргэжлийн нэрийг бүтээ.

мэч

лоочж

шагб

хаизлра

агадр

ютоуан

ацгаад.....

сучарг.....

Exercise 3. Answer the questions. Асуултад хариул.

1. Чиний монгол аав ээж юу хийдэг вэ? _____

2. Чиний америк аав ээж юу хийдэг вэ? _____

Exercise 4. Read the story then circle the correct answer. Эхийг уншаад зөв хариултыг дугуйл.

Миний нэр Түмэн. Би 15-н настай. Манай ам бүл 5. Би нэг ах, хоёр эгчтэй. Харин дүүгүй. Манай аавыг Насан гэдэг. Тэр инженер. Аав маань 1950-н онд төрсөн. Одоо 55-н настай. Манай ээжийг Цэгмид гэдэг. Тэр 50-н настай. Ээж сургуульд ажилладаг. Манай ахын нэр Баяр. Тэр эхнэртэй 2 охинтой. Хоёр эгч оюутан. Бид маш эвсэг, сайхан гэр бүл.

1. Манай ахын нэр

а. Насан

б. Баяр

с.Түмэн

2. Би ах, эгчтэй.

а. 1, 3

б. 2, 1

с. 1, 2

3. Манай ээж

а. инженер

б. багш

с. оюутан

4. Манай ах

а. гэрлэсэн.

б гэрлээгүй

с. нөхөртэй

5. Би

а. дүүгүй

б. ахгүй

с. эгчгүй

UNIT TWO EXIT PASS

Competencies: personal/family questions, present simple tense, numbers

Pass One. Change verbs from their infinitive forms to present simple by making a sentence. Энгийн одоо цагт хувиргаж өгүүлбэр зохио

Хийх	_____
Идэх	_____
Явах	_____
Уулзах	_____
Ярих	_____
Унших	_____
Ажиллах	_____
Орох	_____

Pass Two. Answer the questions. Асуултад хариул.

1. Танай монгол ээж, аавыг хэн гэдэг вэ?
2. Тэд нар юу хийдэг вэ?
3. Чи Монголд ямар ажил хийдэг вэ?
4. Чи ах, эгч, дүүгүй юм уу?
5. Чи ямар мэргэжилтэй вэ?
6. Энд хоёр жил ажиллаж байгаа юу?
7. Чи коллеж төгссөн үү, их сургууль төгссөн үү?
8. Хотод төгсөөгүй юм уу?
9. Чи хэдэн сард төрсөн бэ?
10. Чи хэдэн настай вэ?

UNIT 3: FOOD

- Describing food needs and expressing satisfaction
- Talking with salespeople in the grocery store
- Food and expressing likes and dislikes
- Expressing food preferences

Learning Strategies from Nick Bradish, TEFL, M23



Always have your dictionary. You're going to spend a fair amount of time in this country waiting. Waiting for counterparts, waiting for your ride, waiting in line, etc. Just always have it with you. You might get curious and want to look up a word you've forgotten, or, even more fun, eavesdrop on someone's conversation and try getting a couple of new vocabulary words out of it.

When studying on your own, try to organize the content of your studies by topic areas. Don't just pick out random words and try to memorize them. Instead, pick a topic area, spend a quick hour writing down all the vocabulary you can think of for that area (trust me, it's less daunting than you think), get the translations, and then study. You won't remember all of it, but clustering new vocab will help you retain a lot more. Also, choose topics that are interesting to you. If you like fashion, study the language around it. If you like academics, pick some of that up.

A plate of buuz in the morning to get you going.

Lesson 1

Шинэ үг

New Words

Ямар	What/how/ what kind of
Юунд	What
Бас	Also/too
Хүнс	Food (groceries)
Жимс	Fruit(s)
Ногоо	Vegetable(s)
Ундаа/уух юм	Drink(s)
Амттан	Sweet(s)
Дуртай	To like
Дургүй	To dislike

Dialogue

Баяр: Чи жимсэнд дуртай юу?
Майкл: (Тийм) дуртай.
Баяр: Чи ямар жимсэнд дуртай вэ?
Майкл: Алиманд дуртай. Харин чи юунд дуртай вэ?
Баяр: Тарганд, сүүнд дуртай.
Майкл: Чи загасанд дуртай юу?
Баяр: Дургүй.

Хүнс - Food (general)



талх



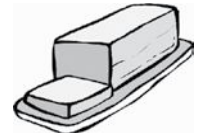
Будаа



Өндөг



Давс/ Перец



Масло



Бяслаг



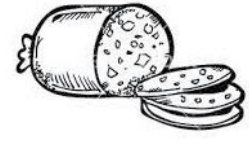
Кетчуп



Гоймон



Гурил



Хиам

Мах - Meat



Мах



Хонины мах



Загас



Үхрийн мах



Адууны мах



Тахианы мах

Уух юм - Drinks



Жүүс



(Цэвэр) ус (Лаазтай) ундаа



Цай

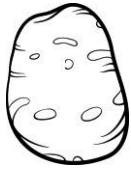


Кофе



Сүү

Хүнсний ногоо - Vegetables



Төмс



Байцай



Сонгино



Сармис



Мөөг



Манжин



Помидор



Халуун
чинжүү



Амтат чинжүү



Өгөрций
Өргөст хэмх



Шош



Хаш



Эрдэнэ
шиш



Лууван



Вандуй

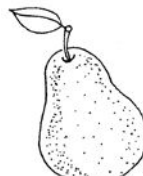
Жимс - Fruits



Банан



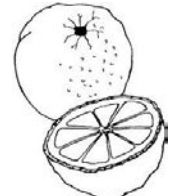
Алим



Лийр



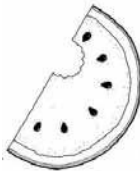
Тоор



Жүрж



Усан үзэм



Шийгуа



Киви



Хар чавга



Гүзээлзгэнэ

Амттан - Desserts



Зайрмаг



Бялуу



Шоколад



Чихэр



Печень



Кекс

Хоол - Meals/ Dishes/ Food



1-р /нэгдүгээр/ хоол

Шөл: ногоотой шөл
Soup: гурилтай шөл
гоймонтой шөл
будаатай шөл
хар шөл



2-р /хоёрдугаар/ хоол

Хуурга: төмстэй хуурга
Dishes: ногоотой хуурга
будаатай хуурга
гоймонтой хуурга

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. LIKES AND DISLIKES

For expressing likes and dislikes, the following forms are used.

When using дуртай, you must put the object in the dative case.

Subject	Object + нд	дуртай.
Би	алим+ нд	дуртай
Тэр	алим + нд	дургүй.

When дуртай/дургүй is used with a verb, this construction always requires the infinitive ending, –х.

Алим идэх		to eat an apple
Сүү уух		to drink milk
Хоол хийх	дуртай = Like	to cook
Төмс шарах		to fry potatoes
Бөмбөг тоглох		to play ball

Subject	verb+х дуртай	= noun+нд дуртай
Алим	идэх дуртай	= алиманд дуртай
Сүү	уух дуртай	= сүүнд дуртай
Хоол	идэх дуртай	= хоолонд дуртай

2. INTERROGATIVE

For the interrogative, the following forms are used.

Subject	юунд	дуртай вэ?
You	to what	like-with (What do you like?)
Чи	юунд	дуртай вэ?

Subject	ямар object + нд	дуртай вэ?
You	what kind of fruit	like-with (What kind of fruit do you like?)
Чи	ямар жимсэнд	дуртай вэ?

Subject	object +нд	дуртай юу?
You	to meat	like-with (Do you like meat?)
Чи	маханд	дуртай юу?

To express a group of similar things (like using “et cetera” in English) you can repeat the word and replace the first letter with an м. When the first letter of the word is a “м”, the new initial letter will instead be “з”.

цай май	(tea, etc.)	талх малх	(bread and all the trappings)
мах зах	(meat, etc.)	малгай залгай	(hats and stuff)



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Write the names of the foods and answer the questions.
Доорх хүнсийг нэрлэж асуултад хариул.

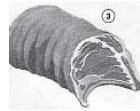
Энэ юу вэ?

(What is this?)

Чи+ нд дуртай юу?

(Do you like...?)

Чи юунд дуртай вэ? Чи юунд дургүй вэ? (What do you like? What do you dislike?)



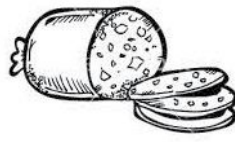
_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,



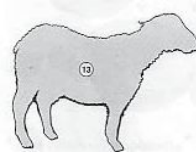
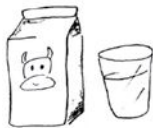
_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,



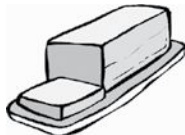
_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,



_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,



_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,



_____ ,

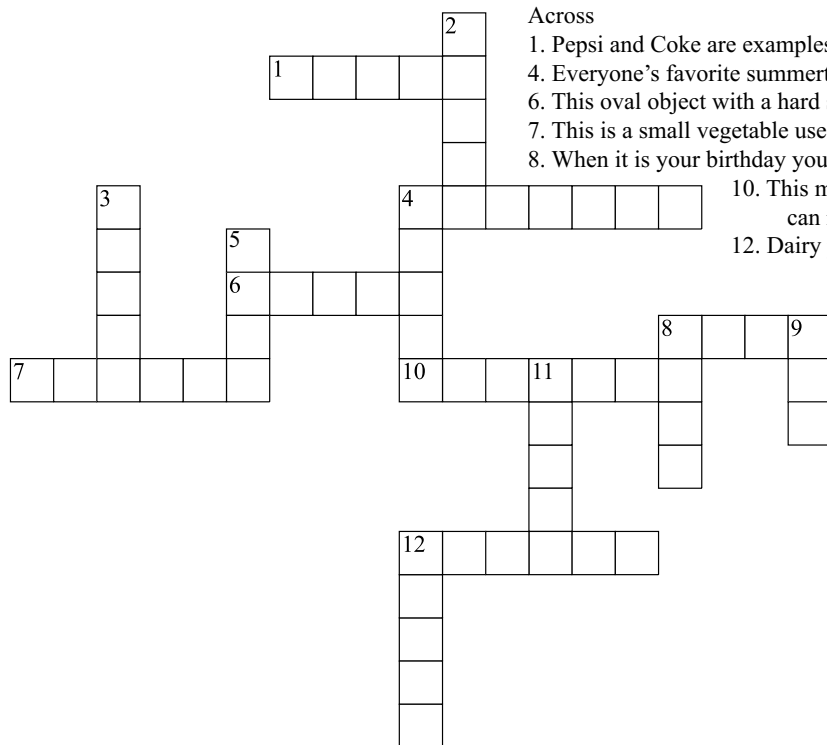
_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

_____ ,

Exercise 2. Crossword Puzzle. Үгийн сүлжээ



Across

1. Pepsi and Coke are examples of this.
4. Everyone's favorite summertime dessert.
6. This oval object with a hard shell is produced by chickens
7. This is a small vegetable used to spice Italian bread.
8. When it is your birthday you might eat this sweet food.
10. This medium-size white or yellow vegetable when cut can make you cry.
12. Dairy product used in making pizza.

Down

2. This animal gives us meat and eggs.
3. Children love to eat this small sugary food wrapped in paper.
4. This animal swims quickly and has scales.
5. You need this vegetable to make fries.
8. This black drink is very hot and some people put milk and sugar in it.
9. This white drink comes from a cow.
11. Common ingredient in bread.
12. The small grain that is cooked and eaten as food.

Exercise 3. Complete the spelling of the words. Үгийг гүйцээ.

Т ___ Х

БУД ___

ӨН ___

ТӨ ___

Л ___ ВАН

Б ___ ЦАЙ

БЯ ___ АГ

Х ___ М

ГУ ___ Л

Ц ___

У ___ Д ___ А

А ___ М

Exercise 4. Add 3 more words to each list. Тус бүрд нь 3 үг нэмж бич.

Төмс, лууван, байцай, _____

Цай, сүү, пиво, _____

Алим, банан, жүрж, _____

Хонины мах, загас, _____

Будаа, гурил, _____

Шоколад, чихэр, _____

Exercise 5. Write questions for the answers. Асуух өгүүлбэр бич.

Тэр чихрэнд дуртай.

Тиймээ, би алиманд дуртай.

Би лууван, өгөрций, байцайнд дуртай.

Үгүй, Жон манжинд дургүй.

Exercise 6. Find the mistakes and correct them. Алдааг олж зас.

1. Монголчууд мах дуртай.
2. Та сүүнд дуртай вэ?
3. Чи ямар хоол дургүй вэ?
4. Би алиманд, банан, жүржэнд дуртай.

Exercise 7. Interview your classmates. What foods do they like or dislike? Ангийнхантайгаа ямар хүнс, хоолонд дуртай дургүйгээ ярилц.

нэр	дуртай			дургүй		

FOOD

Mongolian language scholars have recently changed the word for cabbage to, “байцай” from “байцаа.” Though the word for cabbage is spoken as “байцаа”, the written form was changed for two reasons. Firstly, the word’s Chinese roots, and, secondly, the similarity that “байцаа” shares with the command form of the verb “байцаах”, the verb for “to inspect, inquire, interrogate, or probe”.

Cultural Note



Lesson 2

Шинэ үг

New Words

Өнөөдөр	Today
Өчигдөр	Yesterday
Маргааш	Tomorrow
Өглөө	Morning
Өдөр	Day/afternoon
Орой	Late/evening
Зөөгч	Waiter/waitress
Тооцоо	Bill/check
Шарсан	Fried
Чанасан	Boiled
Жигнэсэн	Baked/steamed
Амтай	Delicious
Болно	It is enough
Хуурах	To stir
Нэмэх	To add
Чанах	To boil
Шарах	To fry
Жигнэх	To bake/steam
Идэх	To eat
Дуусах	To be finished
Өлсөх	To be hungry
Цадах	To be full
Май	Here you are!

Mongolians eat 5 kinds of herding animals:
horse, camel, sheep, goat and cow

Mongolians don't consider eggs to be meat.

Sausage and fish are considered meat
in Mongolia.

Cultural Note



Dialogue

Баяр: Өчигдөр чи ямар хоол идсэн бэ?

Майкл: Будаатай хуурга идсэн.

Баяр: Өнөө орой ямар хоол идэх вэ?

Майкл: Ногоотой шөл.

Баяр: Чи маргааш ямар хоол идмээр
байна (вэ)?

Майкл: Шарсан өндөг, жигнэсэн будаа.

* * *

Монгол ээж: Чи будаа идэх үү? Өлсөж
байна уу?

Майкл: Үгүй, баярлалаа. Болно,
болно. Би цадсан.

MEANWHILE, AT THE ГУАНЗ

Ник: За өлсөж байна. Зөөгч өө!

Биндэрьяа: Сайн байна уу?

Ник: Сайн. Ямар хоол гарсан бэ?

Биндэрьяа: Бууз байна, ногоотой шөл
байна.

Ник: Таван бууз идмээр* байна.

Биндэрьяа: За... Май.

Жонхор: Дөрвөн бууз авмаар* байна.

Биндэрьяа: Бууз дууссан шүү!
Ногоотой шөл байна.

Жонхор: Махтай юу? Махгүй юу?

Биндэрьяа: махгүй.

Жонхор: Хөөе, махгүй хоол хоол
биш ээ!

Ник: Зөөгч өө! Тооцоо хиймээр* байна.

*Though we have written these in the
“-маар⁴ байна” verb tense, these re-
quests are typically written in a differ-
ent verb tense that you will learn in the
following lesson. I guess we just got
ahead of ourselves!

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. FUTURE TENSE

There are 2 common forms of the future tense:

a. Future simple: The suffix –на, -нэ, -но, and -нө are used for positive future tense and are added to verb stems according to the rule of vowel harmony.

b. Future near: The suffix -лаа⁴ is used when people talk about the very near future. It expresses an action that happened in the recent past, or that is about happen in the immediate future. Very infrequently, it is sometimes used regarding things that will happen soon or have just happened on a larger time scale. For example, if someone who usually lives in the city visits the countryside, their first days in the countryside that person may say:

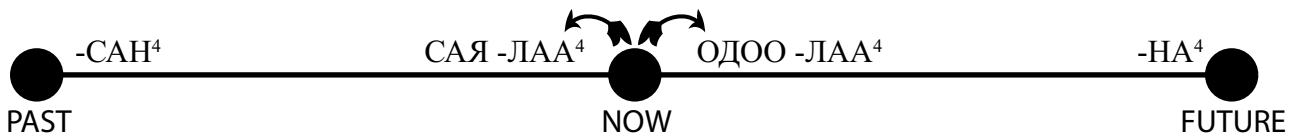
Би хотоос ирлээ.
I have just arrived from the city.

Perhaps the most common phrase that uses this tense is said while standing up with the intention of leaving a home one is visiting:

За за, би явлаа.
Yeah yeah, I'm leaving.

Also:

Автобус (одоо) явлаа. Автобус (сая) явлаа.
A bus is going now. A bus has just gone.



2. –МААР⁴ (БАЙХ) SUFFIX TO EXPRESS A WISH OR DESIRE

The –маар⁴ (байх) suffix expresses a wish or desire that can be realized.

Би монгол хэл сурмаар байна.
I Mongol language to learn-want is.
(I'd like to learn Mongolian.)

Би нэг юм идмээр байна.
I one thing eat-want is.
(I'd like to eat a thing.)

Negation is – маар⁴гүй байна.

Би монгол хэл сурмааргүй байна.
I Mongol language learn-want-not is.
(I don't want to learn Mongolian.)

3. USING VERBS AS ADJECTIVES

As mentioned, the past simple verb form (-САН⁴) is used for all kinds of past actions. If this form of the verb is placed in front of a noun, it describes the following noun. In other words, verbs can be used as adjectives.

Би өндөг шарсан.
I egg fried.
(I fried an egg.)

Би шарсан өндөг идсэн.
I fried egg ate.
(I ate a fried egg.)

Би шараагүй өндөг иддэггүй.
I fried-not egg eat-don't.
(I don't eat unfried egg.)

Дорж будаа жигнэсэн.
(Дорж steamed rice)

Жигнэсэн будаа
(Steamed rice)

Жигнээгүй будаа
(Not steamed rice)

Дорж ус буцалгасан.
(Дорж boiled water)

Буцалсан ус
(Boiled water)

Буцлаагүй ус
(Not boiled water)

Буцлаагүй ус уудаггүй.
Boiled-not water drink-don't.
(I don't drink unboiled water.)

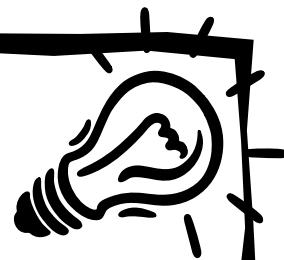
Mongolians have different words for boiling milk, boiling water and making tea:

To boil water - ус буцлах
To boil milk - сүү хөөрөх
To make tea - цай чанах

Cultural Note



Though past tense verbs are the most common way verbs are used to modify nouns, you will encounter verbs in other tenses used to modify nouns as well. For example, when waiting with a microbus driver who is preparing to leave, you might hear the question “явах хүн байгаа юу?” We might translate this as “Is there a person who will go?” The verb ‘явах’ modifies ‘хүн’, roughly translated a “to-go person,” or a “will-go person.” Another quick example, “тамхи татдаг хүн,” roughly translated “cigarette smokes person,” could be used as a translation of the word ‘smoker’.





PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Write the appropriate ending. Тохирох үгийг бич.

1. Би өчигдөр загас ид..... .
2. Тэд нар маргааш хотоос ир
3. Тэр өнөө өглөө захиа ав.....
4. Миний ээж маргааш орой хоол хий..... .
5. Багш өчигдөр сайхан амар..... .
6. Чи маргааш өдөр юу хий..... вэ?
7. Манай эмч Болороо 2006 онд англи хэл сур..... .

Exercise 2. Practice the form “маар⁴” and “маар⁴гүй” by changing the verb endings. Маар⁴, маар⁴гүй өгүүлбэр болго.

1. Би сүүтэй цай уусан. Би сүүтэй цай уумаар байна. Би сүүтэй цай уумааргүй байна.
2. Бид чихэргүй кофе уусан.
3. Би өдөр ногоотой хоол иднэ.
4. Бид нар хөл бөмбөг тоглосон.
5. Би монгол хэл сурна.
6. Бид маргааш Дархан явна.
7. Би нөгөөдөр амарна.

Exercise 3. Practice the verb by changing their function in a sentence. Хоёр янзын өгүүлбэр болго.

Verb	verb-сан	adjective noun	noun verb
Шарах	шарсан	Би шарсан төмс идсэн.	Би төмс шарсан.
Чанах
Жигнэх
Буцлах
Хуурах

Exercise 4. Make opposites and make two sentences. Эсрэг үгийг нь бичээд тус бүрд нь 2 өгүүлбэр зохио.

Давстай цай, давсгүй цай. Би давсгүй цайнд дуртай. Би давстай цай уумаар байна.

1. Давстай хоол _____
2. Махтай бууз _____
3. Саахаргүй цай _____
4. Будаатай хуурга _____
5. Шоколадтай сүү _____
6. Банштай цай _____
7. Будаатай цай _____
8. Жимстэй цай _____

ЧАДАХ, БОЛОХ, AND YOU!

All native English speakers know the difference between ‘can’ and ‘may’, but in everyday speech English speakers often don’t differentiate between the two verbs. We’ve all had teachers who respond to the question “Can I go to the bathroom?” with “I don’t know, can you?”. Well, Mongolia is a country of those teachers. The difference between ‘can’ and ‘may’ should be memorized and used properly in everyday speech so that the exact meaning is clear.

1. ЧАДАХ: ‘TO BE ABLE’ IS USED FOR EXPRESSING:

1. Capability, particularly in regards to actions (ie, “Чи морь унаж чадах уу” - “Can you ride a horse?”). For example, if you look up the words “чадвар,” “чадавхи” and “чадал,” in your Oxford-Monsudor dictionary, you will see that it corresponds to power, ability, and capability, all derived from the root “чад-”.

Саара монгол дуу дуулж чаддаг. Sarah, can sing Mongolian songs.

2. Requests or ask permission

Саара, чи маргааш үдэшлэг дээр монгол дуу дуулж чадах уу?
Sarah, can you sing a Mongolian song at the party tomorrow?

3. Possibility

Саара: Уучлаарай. Би маргааш дуулж чадахгүй. Маргааш би завгүй.
Sarah: Sorry. I can’t sing tomorrow. I will be busy tomorrow.

Жишээ нь:

Тэр монголоор ярьж чадах уу?	Can S/He speak Mongolian?
Энэ юмыг ганцаараа хийж чадах уу?	Can you do this by yourself?
Би монгол хоол хийж чаддаггүй.	I can’t make Mongolian food.
Манай багш нар оросоор ярьж чадна.	Our teachers can speak Russian.
Би хувцсаа оёж чаддаггүй.	I can’t sew my clothes.
Яа-яа! Галаа түлж чадаагүй!	Oh no! I couldn’t light my fire!

2. БОЛОХ: MAY, TO BE

The word “Болох” generally has 3 purposes. It is sometimes used similarly to “байх” in order to express the English “to be,” though “байх” is more common. Second, it is used to ask permission (see below, as well as Unit 4, Lesson 1, Grammar Point 2). Third, as you’ve seen in the previous lesson’s dialogue, it is used to express something’s being finished, or being sufficient.

Жишээ нь:

Би хүчтэй болно оо!	I will be/become strong!
Тэр сайн тамирчин болно.	S/He will be a good athlete.
Жон маргааш завтай болох уу?	Will John be free tomorrow?
Шөл боллоо!	The soup is (just now) finished.
Тэр өрсөлдөгч болсон.	S/He was a contender.
Би дахиад идэхгүй. Боллоо!	I won’t eat again. It’s enough!

Би гарч болох уу?

May I leave/exit?

Тэмүжин явж болохгүй шүү!

Temujin may not go!

In addition to it, болох is used for expressing possibility.

Монголоос Америк руу мориор явж болох уу?

Is it available to go to America by horse from Mongolia?



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Circle the one that best fits. Тохирох үгийг нь дугуйл.

1. Тэр морь сайн унажчадна болно
2. Би энийг авч.....чадах уу? болох уу?
3. Дорж малчин. Тэр гэрт амьдарч.....чадна болно
4. Ник монгол дуу дуулж.....чадна болно
5. Миний найз унтаж байна. Би чанга дуулж.....чадахгүй болохгүй
6. Би гал түлж сурсан. Одоо гал түлж.....чадна болно
7. Биүдэслэг дээр ямар дуу дуулжчадах вэ? болох вэ?

Lesson 3

Шинэ үг

New Words

Дэлгүүр	Shop/store
Худалдагч	Shopworker
Өөр	What else/different
Үнэтэй	Price-with (expensive)
Хямд	Cheap
Хариулт	Return money (change)
Шинэ	New/fresh
Хуучин	Old (for things)
Том	Big
Жижиг	Small
700-д ав.	Take it for 700 tugriks
Авах(ъя)	To buy/take (let me)
Ярих	To bargain/to speak
Хэд гэж байна?	How much said is?
Хэд вэ?	What's the price? (How much)

Ямар үнэтэй вэ?

What's the price?

Ямар үнэтэй юм бэ!

How expensive that is!

Dialogue

AT THE SHOP

Трип: Алим ямар үнэтэй вэ?

Худалдагч: 3000-н төгрөг

Трип: Энэ алим хаанахынх вэ?

Худалдагч: Оросынх. Гоё шинэ алим шүү.

Трип: 1 килийг авъя. Том шилтэй ундаа хэд вэ?

Худалдагч: 800.

Трип: 2-ыг авъя.

Худалдагч: Май, энэ таны хариулт.

Трип: Баярлалаа.

BUYING PHONE CREDIT

Трип: Моби-гийн нэгж байна уу?

Худалдагч: Байна, байна. Авах уу?

Трип: 500-н (таван зуун) нэгж авъя.

Худалдагч: За май. 500-н (таван зуун) төгрөг.

Трип: За, май. Маш их баярлалаа.

Худалдагч: Зүгээр зүгээр. Баяртай.

At this point, you've got the brass tacks about using your Mongolian cell phone, how to send and borrow нэгж, and you probably have a rough idea of the rates on нэгж for phone calls and text messages. Some other things to note:

The first two digits of a phone number correspond to the service provider of that cell phone number. For example, 94-96, and 99 are Mobicom numbers, 88 and 98 are Gmobile numbers.

Numbers listed with 6 digits correspond to a landline, almost always in Улаанбаатар. They are actually 8 digits, but the first two digits are 11. This is unspoken knowledge.

Cultural Note



GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. QUANTITY: ТОО ХЭМЖЭЭ



лааз

лаазтай
ундаа



шил

шилтэй
кетчуп



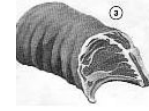
уут

ууттай
гурил



аяга

аягатай
цай



кило / грамм

кило
мах



ширхэг

ширхэг
чихэр

2. EXPRESSING, “LET ME/US” OR “I/WE WANT/ WILL”

Combination of a verb + Я/Ё/Е (according to vowel harmony) expresses the meaning of “Let me/us _____” or “I/we want/ will”

Алим авъя
Apple buy-let me.
(I'll take an apple)

Хариулт мөнгөө авъя
Return money take-let me.
(I'll take the change).

Явъя
Let me go/Let's go.

Харъя
Let me see/Let's see.

Идье
Let me eat/ Let's eat.

Тоглоё
Let me play/Let's play.

As you may remember seeing from the pronunciation guide at the front of the book (Introduction section IV, Vowels, subsection 4, Signs), the resulting sound of adding the “-я/ё/е” verb ending is a long ий sound.

3. NUMERALS AND NOUNS

When numerals are used in the place of a noun, case endings can be added to them depending on a verb. Авъя requires accusative case ending: -ийг, -ыг, -г.

Number	noun	авъя
2 (хоёр)	лааз	пиво
2 (хоёр)	шил	ундаа
1 (нэг)	уут	гурил авъя.
3 (гурван)	аяга	цай
1 (нэг)	кило	мах
2 (хоёр)	ширхэг	чихэр

noun+(аас ⁴)
пиво(нээс)
ундаа(наас)
гурил(наас)
цай(наас)
мах(наас)
чихэр(нээс)

*number + ыг авъя
хоёрыг
тавыг
нэгийг авъя
гурвыг
нэг килийг
хоёр ширхэгийг



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Circle the one that best fits. Ниитлэг үгийг сонго.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-------|-------|
| 1. Тэр морь унаж | чадах | болох |
| 2. Би энийг авч..... | чадах | болох |
| 3. Дорж гэрт амьдарч..... | чадах | болох |
| 4. Чи дуу дуулж..... | чадах | болох |
| 5. Би дуу дуулж..... | чадах | болох |
| 6. Гал түлж..... | чадах | болох |
| 7. Чи ямар дуу дуулж | чадах | болох |

Exercise 2. Find 6 words of quantity. Ол.

лааз, шил, уут, аяга, грамм, ширхэг

Ф	Л	А	А	З	Ц	У	Ж	Э	Н
Г	Ш	Я	Ү	З	К	К	И	Л	Й
Б	Ө	Г	А	А	Х	Р	О	Л	Ы
У	Я	А	Ч	Ш	И	Р	Х	Э	Г
У	Ё	С	М	И	И	Т	Ь	В	Ю
Т	Ф	Ц	У	Л	Г	Р	А	М	М

Exercise 3. Cultural Task: Go to the local store, ask these questions, and write the responses. Дэлгүүр яваад эдгээр асуултуудыг асууж, хариултуудыг бич.

1. Талх ямар үнэтэй вэ? Кофе ямар үнэтэй вэ?
.....
2. Пиво ямар үнэтэй вэ? Шоколад ямар үнэтэй вэ?
.....
3. Фанта ямар үнэтэй вэ? Печень ямар үнэтэй вэ?
.....
4. Банан ямар үнэтэй вэ? Масло ямар үнэтэй вэ?
.....

Exercise 4. Write sentences using the quantity adjective. Эдгээр үгээр өгүүлбэр зохио: лааз, шил, уут, аяга, кило, ширхэг.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

Exercise 5. Underline the appropriate word for the phrase. Тохирох үгийн доогуур зур.

1. Нэг шил / ундаа, будаа, зайрмаг, төмс/
2. Нэг уут / байцай, архи, гурил, шоколад/
3. Нэг кило / хиам, пиво, сүү, ус/
4. Нэг ширхэг / перец, давс, талх, гурил/
5. Нэг лааз / пиво, чихэр, зайрмаг, лууван/

Exercise 6. Make up sentences. Үйл үгийн 3-н цагийг ашиглан өгүүлбэр зохио.

1. Хоёр уут. Би дэлгүүрээс хоёр уут давс авсан.
2. Дөрвөн кило _____
3. Гурван шил _____
4. Зургаан лааз _____
5. Таван литр _____
6. Долоон ширхэг _____

Exercise 7. What ingredients do you need to prepare these meals. Write 3 words in each line. Эдгээр хоолны орцонд юу юу хэрэгтэй вэ? Тус бүрд нь 3-н үг бич.

- | 1. Бууз | 2. Пицца | 3. Сүүтэй цай | 4. Байцайны салат |
|---------|----------|---------------|-------------------|
| _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |

Exercise 8. Work in pairs to make up a dialogue. Write in your notebook and then practice. Хос хосоороо яриа зохиож, дэвтэртээ бичээд, ярианы дадлагаа хий.

You are at the food market and you have to buy a lot of vegetables.
 Ask the seller about the price of the vegetables.
 Ask the seller if the vegetables are fresh.
 Purchase some vegetables.

Customer: _____

Seller: _____

Customer: _____

Seller: _____

Customer: _____

Seller: _____

Customer: _____

Seller: _____

UNIT THREE EXIT PASS

Pass One. Expressing likes and dislikes!

At home, interview 2 host family members about their food preferences. List three food items under each column. Гэрийнхэнтэйгээ хоолны тухай ярилцаад хариуг бич.

нэр	дуртай			дургүй		

Pass Two. Buying stuffs and things at stores!

Use the words provided to write sentences in which you purchase goods. Where necessary, add adjectives of number (like bag, kilo, can, etc.) for purchasing pieces, kilograms, etc. NOTE: Adjectives of number are not listed in the words you must use. Эдгээр зүйлсийг худалдан авахдаа хэрэглэх өгүүлбэр зохио.

1. саахар _____
2. пиво _____
3. гурил _____
4. чинжүү _____
5. давс _____
6. алим _____
7. банан _____
8. тараг _____

Pass Three. Expressing desires to do stuffs and things!

Use the words provided to write sentences expressing your inner feelings and desires. You must properly decline all nouns and properly conjugate all verbs. Or you will be sent back to the States. Юу хүсч байгаа болон хүсэхгүй байгаагаа бич.

1. би идэх адуу мах өнөөдөр

2. маргааш Дархан явах хот би

3. монгол сурах хэл би

4. таван цагт би амрах гэр

SPECIAL FEATURE!!

НААДАМ



Хурдан морины уралдаан
морь уралдах



Бөхийн барилдаан
бөх барилдах



Сур харваа
нум сум харвах

Шинэ үг

Морь	Horse
Уралдах	To race, compete
Уралдаан	A race
Бөх	1. Wrestling 2. Wrestler
Барилдах	To wrestle
Барилдаан	A wrestling match
Нум сум	Bow and arrow
Харвах	Shoot an arrow
Нээлт	Opening ceremony
Харах/Үзэх	To watch/ to see
Тоглох	To play
Тоглоом	Game/toy/joke
Наадах	To celebrate Naadam
Наадам	Naadam festival

New Words

Dialogue

Jake talking with his host mom the week before Naadam. Наадмын өмнөх долоо хоног Жейк ээжтэйгээ ярьж байна.

Жейк: Наадам ямар баяр вэ?

Монгол ээж: Наадам уу? Өө, их гоё баяр.

Жейк: Юу юу хийдэг вэ?

Монгол ээж: Морь уралддаг. Бөх барилддаг. Нум сум харвадаг. Наадмын хуушуур иддэг.

Жейк: Би гоё дээл авмаар байна.

Монгол ээж: За дэлгүүр явъя.

* * *

At the Naadam field. Наадмын талбай дээр.

Зулаа: Сайн уу, Лоора? Сайхан наадаж байна уу?

Лоора: Сайхан. Наадам сайхан уу?

Зулаа: Сайхан. Наадмын нээлт үзсэн үү?

Лоора: Үзсэн. Гоё байсан. Харин чи?

Зулаа: Үзсэн. Би бас бөх үзсэн. Одоо морь үзмээр байна. Хуушуур идмээр байна.

Лоора: За, явъя.

TOAST and WISHES

Та бүгдийн сайн сайхны төлөө
тогтооё!

Thanks, I wish you happiness and good
fortune!

Эрүүл энхийн төлөө!
To health!

Аз жаргалын төлөө!
To happiness

Conversation Starters!

Сайхан наадаж байна уу?

Сайхан наадаарай!

Сайхан наадсан уу!

Are you having a nice Naadam?

Have a good Naadam!

Did you have a good Naadam!

Exercise 1. Have a conversation with your host families asking the following question. Гэрийнхэнтэйгээ ярилц.

Наадмаар та нар юу юу хийх вэ?

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Exercise 2. How would you say if you want...? Яаж хэлэх вэ?

1. To go to see Naadam with your friends
2. To get more drinking water
3. To ask where the restroom is
4. To know what you should bring with you to the naadam field
5. To go back home earlier after a long day walking at the Naadam stadium
6. To know when your host family come back from their picnic

Exercise 3. How would you refuse politely when you are asked...? Яаж эелдгээр хэлэх вэ?

1. To drink shots of vodka.
2. To give toasts and wishes at the party.
3. To try riding a horse, but you don't want to.
4. To join a 2-day picnic out of the town with your family.
5. To eat 10 pieces of meat khuushuur.
6. To ride a motorcycle.

SPECIAL GREETINGS:

There are special greetings before and during Naadam when people meet Naadam participants in games at their field. It is not used very commonly by everyone.

Морь хурдан уу?
Are your horses running fast?

Цэц мэргэн үү?
Are the arrows hitting the targets?

Бөх хүчтэй юу?
Are the wrestlers strong?

Cultural Note



UNIT 4: TRAVELING

- Asking and replying to questions about how to get somewhere
- Asking and replying to questions about time
- Traveling by local transportation

Learning Strategies from Chris Meade, CYD/ PCVL, M22

Post-it notes: write new words on post-its and stick them places you see everyday (the mirror, in front of the toilet, the fridge, etc.)

Carry a small notebook (pocket sized) and a pen/pencil with you at all times. Write down words you hear and look them up later or write down the phonetic sound of the word and ask your cp about it later.

Make a list of minimal pairs and practice pronunciation with a Mongolian who can help you get it right.



Lesson 1

Шинэ үг

New Words

Утас	1.Thread 2. Phone
Дугаар	Number
Мэссеж/ мэсэж	Message
Нэгж	Units / Credits
Явах	To go
Явуулах	To make go (to send)
Яах вэ?	What to do? Now what?
Хоёулаа	The two of us (both)
Хамт	Together
Илгээмж	Parcel
Гадаа	Outside
Гадаад	Foreign / International (mail)
Дотор	Inside
Дотоод	Domestic (mail)
Захиа	Letter
Марк	Stamp
Ил захидал	Postcard

Dialogue

Трип: Чиний утасны дугаар хэд вэ?

Пүрэв: 95-36-69-78 (ерэн тав, гучин зургаа, жаран ес, далан найм).
Харин чиний утас?

Трип: 96-30-61-12.

Пүрэв: За баярлалаа. Би чамд мэссеж бичнэ.

* * *

Оюун: Чамд нэгж байгаа юу? Утсаар чинь ярьж болох уу?

Трип: Нэгж байхгүй.

Оюун: Тэгвэл хоёулаа дэлгүүрээс нэгж авах уу?

Трип: Тэгье.

There are 4-5 cell phone providers in Mongolia. They are competitive and they give various bonuses to people. Mobicom service is the most universal, but people in the countryside may have more than one cell phone from different providers. Here are a few more key points about Mongolian cell phones:

- The caller is the only person who pays for the call. The call receiver will not pay anything for a call. This situation leads to dokhikh – “дохих”. Dokhikh is where one person will ring another person but hang up the phone before the other person has a chance to answer. Usually this signal means “I’m low on units, so call me back so that I don’t have to pay for this call.”

- Mongolians usually speak phone numbers by two digits numbers.

For example, 99 -88-99-88 would be spoken as:

“ninety-nine, eighty-eight, ninety-nine, eighty-eight.”

- Young people text a lot because it is cheaper than talking

- Here are some phrases related to дохих:

Над руу дохиорой. Би нэгжгүй байна.

Би чам руу дохиноо. Одоо завгүй байна.

Cultural Note



GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. THE COLLECTIVE NUMERALS

Collective numerals and their suffixes have no exact equivalents in English. They express something like “the 4 of (us)/we.”

Хэдүүлээ?	How many of ...	
Хоёулаа	the two of us/both	хоёр + улаа
Дөрвүүлээ	the four of us/all four	дөрөв + үүлээ
Есүүлээ	the nine of us/all nine	ес + үүлээ
Гучуулаа	the thirty of us/all thirty	гуч + уулаа
Хорин хоёулаа	all twenty two of us together	хорин хоёр + улаа
Зуугуулаа	all hundred of us together	зуу + (г)уулаа

Note: Memorize the exceptions for one, two and the numbers which end in two.

Ганцаараа	on one's own/by oneself/alone
Хоёулаа	the two of us/both
Бүгдээрээ	all of us / “бөөнөөрөө, массаараа,” are very colloquial)
Цөмөөрөө	all of the people
Олуулаа	many of them
Цөөхүүлээ	a few of them
Хэдүүлээ	few of us

2. PERMISSION

The suffixes –Ж and –Ч are used to combine verbs for expressing permission: MAY/CAN – БОЛОХ. The verbs in brackets are also more colloquial.

Энд сууж болох уу? (суучих уу?)	May I sit here?	Болно/болохгүй (Yes / No)
... авч болох уу? (авчих уу?)	May I take...?	Болно/болохгүй
... харж болох уу? (харчих уу?)	May I look...?	Болно/болохгүй
... үзэж болох уу? (үзчих үү?)	May I see...?	Болно/болохгүй
... өгч болох уу? (өгчих үү?)	May I give...?	Болно/болохгүй

-Ж: The final -x is replaced with -ж for most words.

Example: хийх – хийж, үзэх – үзэж, сонсох – сонсож

-Ч: The final –vowel+x is replaced with –ч for word stems ending with p, в, or г in some words. Example: сурах – сурч, авах - авч

Note: Болох is translated as to become, to get, or to change depending on the context.

To become healthy	- эрүүл болох
To get dark	- харанхуй болох
To be changed	- өөр болох

3. ИНГЭХ AND ТЭГЭХ

Ингэх can be literally translated as “to do something in this manner.” While тэгэх can be translated as “to do something in that matter.”

• **Ингээд:** Can be translated as “in this way” or “like this.” Usually this word is used when showing someone how to do something.

Example: If your host mother is showing you how to make a fire, every time she performs an action, she may say: “ингээд, ингээд, ингээд... ингээд, ингээд”

• **Тэгээд:** Is translated as “and then”

Example: Тэд нар дэлгүүр явсан. Тэгээд хоол хийсэн.

• **Тэгвэл:** Can be translated as “If that is the case”

Example: (while looking at a shirt that costs 20,000 tugriks)

Дорж: Энэ цамц ямар үнэтэй юм бэ?! Надад 15-н мянга байгаа.

This shirt is so expensive! I have 15,000 tugriks

Худалдагч: Тэгвэл 15-н мянгаар аваарай.

If that’s the case, then buy it for 15,000.

• **Тэг тэг** and **Тэгье:** Both these phrases basically mean “yes.” It can loosely be translated as “go ahead” or “let’s do it.”

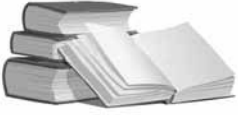
Тэг тэг is used to give people permission.

Example: Фрэд: Би түүнд туслах уу?

Shall I help her?

Мийгаа: Тэг тэг.

Go ahead.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1: Answer the questions. Асуултад хариул.

Та нар хэдүүлээ Америкаас ирсэн бэ?

Бид дөчин наймуулаа Америкаас ирсэн.

1. Та нар хэдүүлээ хотоос ирсэн бэ? _____
2. Та нар гэртээ хэдүүлээ байдаг вэ? _____
3. Та нар хэдүүлээ хөдөө явсан бэ? _____
4. Та нар хэдүүлээ тоглосон бэ? _____

Exercise 2: Make up sentences with the following words, use collective numerals. Хам тоо ашиглан өгүүлбэр зохио.

For example: Хоёр, хоол, хийх

Хоёулаа хоол хийе.

1. Гурав, дэлгүүр, орох _____
2. Тав, шуудан, явах _____
3. Зургаа, пиво, уух _____
4. Арав, хамт, тоглох _____
5. Маргааш, найм, ундаа, авах _____
6. Хоёр, захиа, явуулах _____

Exercise 3: Ask permission in Mongolian: Би –ж/ч болох уу? Зөвшөөрөл ав.

1. May I come in? _____ (орох)
2. May I close the door? _____ (хаалга хаах)
3. May I sit here? _____ (энд суух)
4. May I see? _____ (үзэх)
5. May I go? _____ (явах)
6. May I study with you? _____ (сурах)
7. May I leave? _____ (гарах)
8. May I take the book? _____ (авах)

Exercise 4: Select the correct words below. Зөв үгийг сонго.

1. Би захиа _____ (явуулмаар, явмаар) байна.
2. Би маргааш Дархан _____ (явуулмаар, явмаар) байна.
3. _____ (хоёр, хоёулаа) хамт дэлгүүр оръё.
4. Энэ дугтуйг _____ (үзэх, үзэж) болох уу?
5. Өчигдөр би _____ (марк, захиа) бичсэн.
6. Би монгол _____ (марканд, илгээмжинд) дуртай.
7. Америкаас _____ (илгээмж, ширхэг) ирсэн.

Exercise 5: Work in pairs to make sentences. Хосоороо өгүүлбэр зохио.

А: Хэдэн нэгж авах вэ? /Нэгж хэдийг авах вэ?

Б: Мянга / Мянгыг.



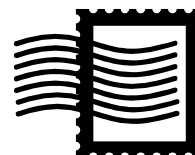
Билет 3



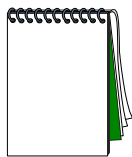
ном 5



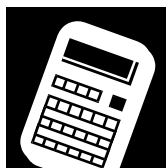
харандаа 7



марк 5



Дэвтэр 10



Тооны машин 2



илгээмж 2



нэгж 5000

SPECIAL FEATURE!!

Guide to Texting in Mongolian

These are the Roman letters that Mongolians use while texting to substitute for the Cyrillic.

А	А	П	Р
Б	В	Р	R
В	W/V	С	S
Г	G	Т	T
Д	D	У	U
Е	YE/E	Ү	U/V
Ё	YO	Ф	F
Ж	J	Х	H/X/KH
З	Z	Ц	TS
И	I	Ч	CH
Ө	U/O	Ш	SH
К	K	Ь/Ъ/Ы	
Л	L	Э	E
М	M	Ю	YU
Н	N	Я	YA
О	O		

Some Cyrillic letters have more than one substitute Roman letter. Be consistent with your choice.

Example: Cyrillic: үс
Texting: us or vs

Sometimes, Mongolians will also leave out letters from words to make texting faster. The words can usually be understood.

Example: Cyrillic: Сайн уу?
Texting: sn uu?

Example Conversation:

Биёонсэ: Sn uu? Yu bn?
(Сайн уу? Юу байна?)
(How are you? What's up?)

Лэди Гага: Taiwan daa. Chi yu hj bn?
(Тайван даа. Чи юу хийж байна?)
(I'm good. What are you doing?)

Биёонсэ: Hool hj bn. Manaid irerei.
(Хоол хийж байна. Манайд ирээрэй)
(Making food. Come over to my place)

Лэди Гага: Za, одоо уwлаа.
(За, одоо яwлаа.)
(Alright. I will leave now)

Lesson 2

Шинэ үг New Words

Баруун	Right
Зүүн	Left
Тал	Side
Тийшээ	That way
Хүрэх/явах	To go/to get
Эхлээд	First
Дараа нь	Afterwards/ then
Чигээрээ	Straight
Урагшаа	Straight/southward
Хойшоо	Backward/northward
Эргэх	Turn
Зүүн талд	Left side/east
Зүүн тийшээ	To the left
Баруун талд	Right side/west
Баруун тийшээ	To the right
Хойд/ард	North/ rear/ back
Урд /өмнө	South/ front
Интернэтэд суух	To use the internet

Dialogue

Ээрин: Би интернэтэд суумаар байна.
Хаана сууж болох вэ?

Болдоо: Холбоон дээр интернэт кафе
байгаа.

Ээрин: Өө, тийм үү? Холбоо хаана
байдаг юм бэ?

Болдоо: Хүнсний захын баруун талд.

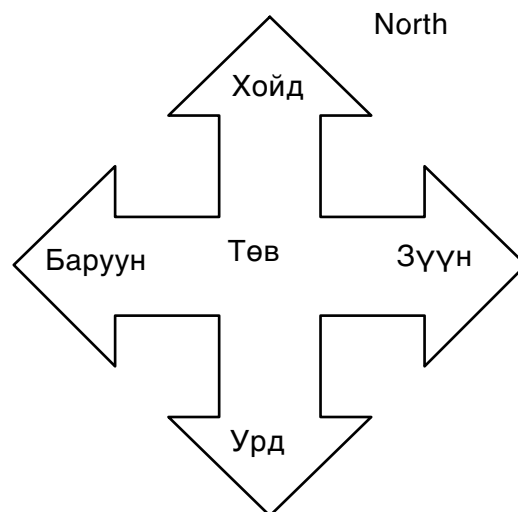
Ээрин: Тийшээ яаж очих вэ?

Болдоо: Эхлээд чигээрээ яваарай. Тэгээд
зүүн гар тийшээ эргээрэй. Дараа
нь баруун (гар) тийшээ эргээрэй.
Хүнсний зах байгаа.

Ээрин: Баярлалаа.

Холбоо (communication centers) are located in at least every aimag center. These buildings are usually where the шуудан (post office) and various other communication related services are located. Usually there is an Internet cafe, a place where you can buy plane tickets (or bus tickets), and an office for at least one of the phone companies of Mongolia.

Cultural Note



Хаана? (where)

хойд талд	урд талд
баруун талд	зүүн талд

Хаашаа? (to where)

хойшоо	урагшаа
баруун тийш(ээ)	зүүн тийш(ээ)

Хаана (location): байх, амрах,
ажиллах, ирэх, идэх, амьдрах,
хийх, буух, зогсох

Хаашаа (direction): явах, нисэх,
харах, заах

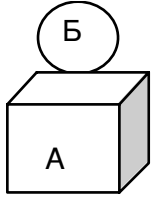
GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. PREPOSITIONS OF LOCATION

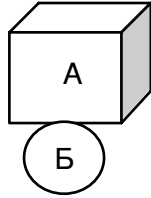
Б хаана байна вэ?

(Б is the subject)

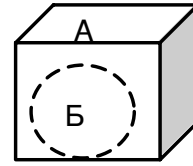
Where is Б?



Дээр



доор



дотор

Б А дээр байна.
Б is on A.

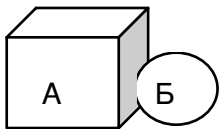
Б А доор байна.
Б is under A.

Б А дотор байна.
Б is inside A.

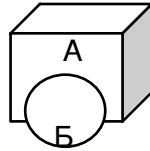
The post-positions дээр, доор, and дотор take only the -н ending.

Ширээн дотор
Шалан дээр
Цонхон доор

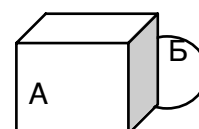
table's inside (inside the table)
floor's on (on the floor)
window's under (under the window)



дэргэд/хажууд



урд/өмнө

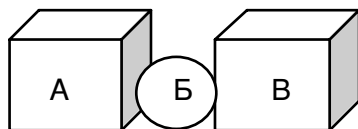


ард/цаана

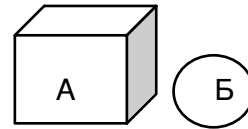
Б А-гийн хажууд байна.
Б is next to A.

Б А-гийн урд байна.
Б is in front of A.

Б А-гийн ард байна.
Б is behind A.



хооронд



гадаа/гадна

Б А,В хоёрын хооронд байна.
Б is between A and B.

Б А-гийн гадаа байна.
Б is outside A.

These post-positions take the endings: -ний/ -ны, -ийн/ -ын

Ширээний хажууд
Сургуулийн урд
Цонхны хооронд
Театрын гадна

table's next to (next to the table)
school's in front of (in front of a school)
window's between (between the windows)
theater's outside (outside the theater)

English pre-positions of location are expressed in Mongolian by post-positions. The nouns before the post-positions should be in the genitive case (possessive).

Хүнсний захын баруун талд ...
Food market's right side.
On the right side of the food market

The genitive case ending was presented in Unit 2, Lesson 1. The endings: -ын, -ийн, -ы, -ний, and -н are added to the stems of words according to the rule.

Байшингийн зүүн талд	building's left side	- on the left of the building
Сургуулийн урд	school's front	- in front of the school
Талбайн ард	square's behind	- the north of the square
Замын хажуугаар	road's next-by	- along the road

Pronouns should be in the possessive form.

Миний дэргэд	my next	- next to me
Түүний өмнө	him/his in front of	- in front of him
Таны ард	your behind	- behind you

The post-positions дээр, доор and дотор take only the -н ending.

Ширээн дотор	inside the table
Шалан дээр	on the floor
Цонхон доор	under the window

2. ABSOLUTE VS. RELATIVE DIRECTIONS

In Mongolian, relative and absolute directions share words. As you have seen above, “баруун” is both right and West, and “зүүн” is both left and East. Kind of confusing, yeah? Contextually, it will make more sense for you. Remember that you're always looking “South” (because “урд” refers to the absolute direction South as well as the relative direction of your front side), even if you're watching the sun set. Likewise, the south side of a building, or a province, will also be called its “front” side.

Examples жишээ нь:

Дорж миний баруун талд сууж байна. Dorj is sitting on my right side.
Би Монголын баруун аймгуудад очно. I will visit Mongolia's western provinces.

Due to the close proximity of China and Russia to Mongolia, Mongolians like to frequently travel to them. However, Mongolians usually don't say “I will go to Russia” or “I will go to China.” Instead, they will just say “I am going North”(Би хойшоо явна) for Russia, and “I will go South”(Би урагшаа явна) for China. “She/He is studying in Russia” can be said as “Тэр хойно сурч байгаа.”

Cultural Note



DIRECTIONALS

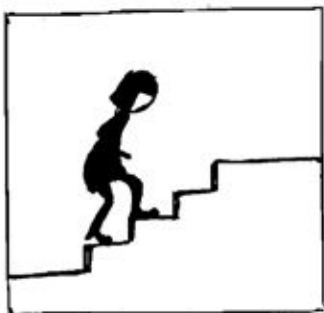
	ХААНА байх Where	ХААШАА явах To where	ХААГУУР явах To whereabouts
Here	Энд	Ийшээ	Энүүгээр
There	Тэнд	Тийшээ	Тэрүүгээр
Over here	Наана	Наашаа	Наагуур
Over there	Цаана	Цаашаа	Цаагуур
On/ top/ upper	Дээр	Дээшээ	Дээгүүр
Under/ down	Доор	Доошоо	Доогуур
South of/ front of / forepart	Урд	Урагшаа	Урдуур
Back/behind	Ард	Арагшаа	Араар
North of/ behind/	Хойно	Хойшоо	Хойгуур
Beside/ nearby/ at the side of	Хажууд	Хажуу тийшээ	Хажуугаар
Out/ outside of	Гадаа	Гадаа/ гадагшаа	Гадуур
Inside/ in/ into	Дотор	Дотор/ дотогшоо	Дотуур
Right /west	Баруун талд	Баруун тийшээ	Баруун талаар
Left/ east	Зүүн талд	Зүүн тийшээ	Зүүн талаар
	<p>These are used more for direct location.</p> <p>Example: Бал хаана байна? Where is the pen?</p> <p>Бал тэнд байна. The pen is there.</p> <p>Шуудан хаана байдаг вэ? Where is the post office?</p> <p>Шуудан дэлгүүрийн ард байдаг. The post office is behind the store.</p>	<p>These are used more for direction. In this case, the speaker is asking or giving exact directions.</p> <p>Example: Чи хаашаа явах вэ? Where will you go?</p> <p>Би тийшээ явна. I will go that way(there).</p>	<p>These are used more for “whereabouts” when dealing with directions. The answer could be many places.</p> <p>Example: Чи хаагуур явах вэ? Whereabouts are you going?</p> <p>Би сургуулийн баруун талаар явна. I’m going by the right side of the shop.</p>



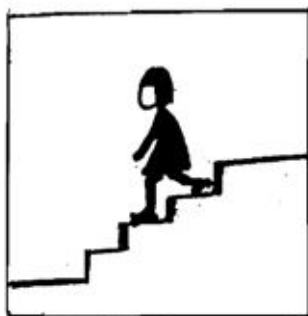
Ийшээ and Тийшээ

If you were to ask someone where they went and they responded with “Ийшээ тийшээ явсан,” it doesn’t mean they went “here and there.” This can be translated as “I went to many places.”

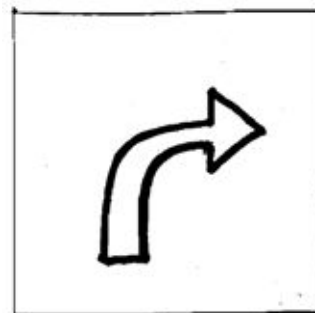
Some directional words take specific verbs - see the pictures below for examples:



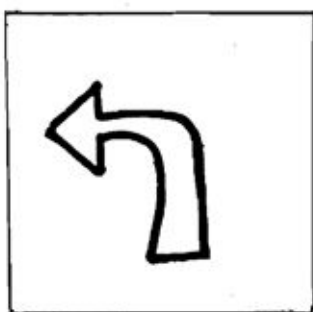
Дээшээ
гар- яв-



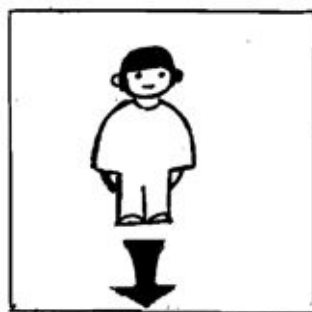
Доошоо
буу- яв-



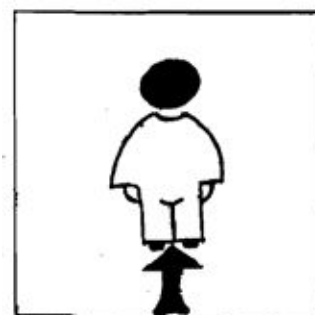
Баруун тийшээ
эргэ- хар- яв-



Зүүн тийшээ
эргэ- хар- яв-



Наашаа
ир- суу- хар-



цаашаа
яв- суу- хар-

3. ORDERED ACTIONS

When you are talking about ordered actions the following phrases are commonly used.

Эхлээд чигээрээ яваад
дараа нь зүүн тийш эргээд
тэгээд цааш яваад
сүүлд нь баруун тийш эргэ.

First go straight
afterwards turn left
and then keep going
finally turn right.

4. –ААРАЙ⁴

The use of the –аарай⁴ ending is common in commands (sometimes in polite commands). This is equivalent to the English word “please”. Use verb + аарай⁴ to comply with vowel harmony. If the root form of the word ends in a long vowel or a diphthong, a “r” must be inserted. The diphthong “уй” is not used here and remember that there is no “өй” diphthong in Mongolian.

зогсох	зогс+оорой	уух	уу+(г)аарай
орох	ор+оорой	суух	суу+(г)аарай
идэх	ид+ээрэй	буух	буу+(г)аарай
өгөх	өг+өөрэй		



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. A mother is giving her son the following instructions. Write them using the form –аарай⁴. Ээж нь хүүдээ ямар заавар өгч байгааг бичээрэй.

1. Аяга таваг угаа. Миний хүү аяга таваг угаагаарай.
2. Оройн хоол хий. _____
3. Одоо унт. _____
4. Гадаа тогло. _____
5. Захиа бич. _____
6. Өглөө эрт бос. _____

Exercise 2. Do the following exercise in pairs. Use the place (газар) provided to first ask your partner where he is going. Then ask why he/she wants to go there. Загварын дагуу асууж ярилц.

Example:

Газар (place): ресторан

A: Чи хаашаа явах вэ?

B: Би ресторан явна.

A: Яагаад ресторан явах вэ?

B: Би хоол идмээр байна.

1. Газар: Барааны дэлгүүр
2. Газар: Хүнсний дэлгүүр
3. Газар: Зах
4. Газар: Баар
5. Газар: Эмнэлэг
6. Газар: Банк
7. Газар: Вокзал

Exercise 3. Select the correct words. Зөв үгийг сонго.

1. Би (гэрт, гэр лүү) амьдрах дуртай.
2. Өчигдөр хүүхдүүд (урагшаа, урд) явсан.
3. Саара миний (баруун талд, баруун тийшээ) зогсож байна.
4. Манай гэр сумын (хойшоо, хойд талд) байдаг.
5. Та одоо (зүүн талд, зүүн тийшээ) эргээрэй.
6. Жолооч оо, одоо (урагшаа, урд) чигээрээ яваад дараа нь (баруун талд, баруун тийшээ) эргээрэй.
7. Жолооч оо, шуудангийн (зүүн талд, зүүн тийшээ) зогсоорой.
8. Жолооч оо, би энэ байшингийн (урагшаа, урд) бууя.

Exercise 4: Look at the map and ask about place locations and directions. Газрын зураг хараад байршил ба чиглэлийг асуу.

Шуудан хаана байдаг вэ?

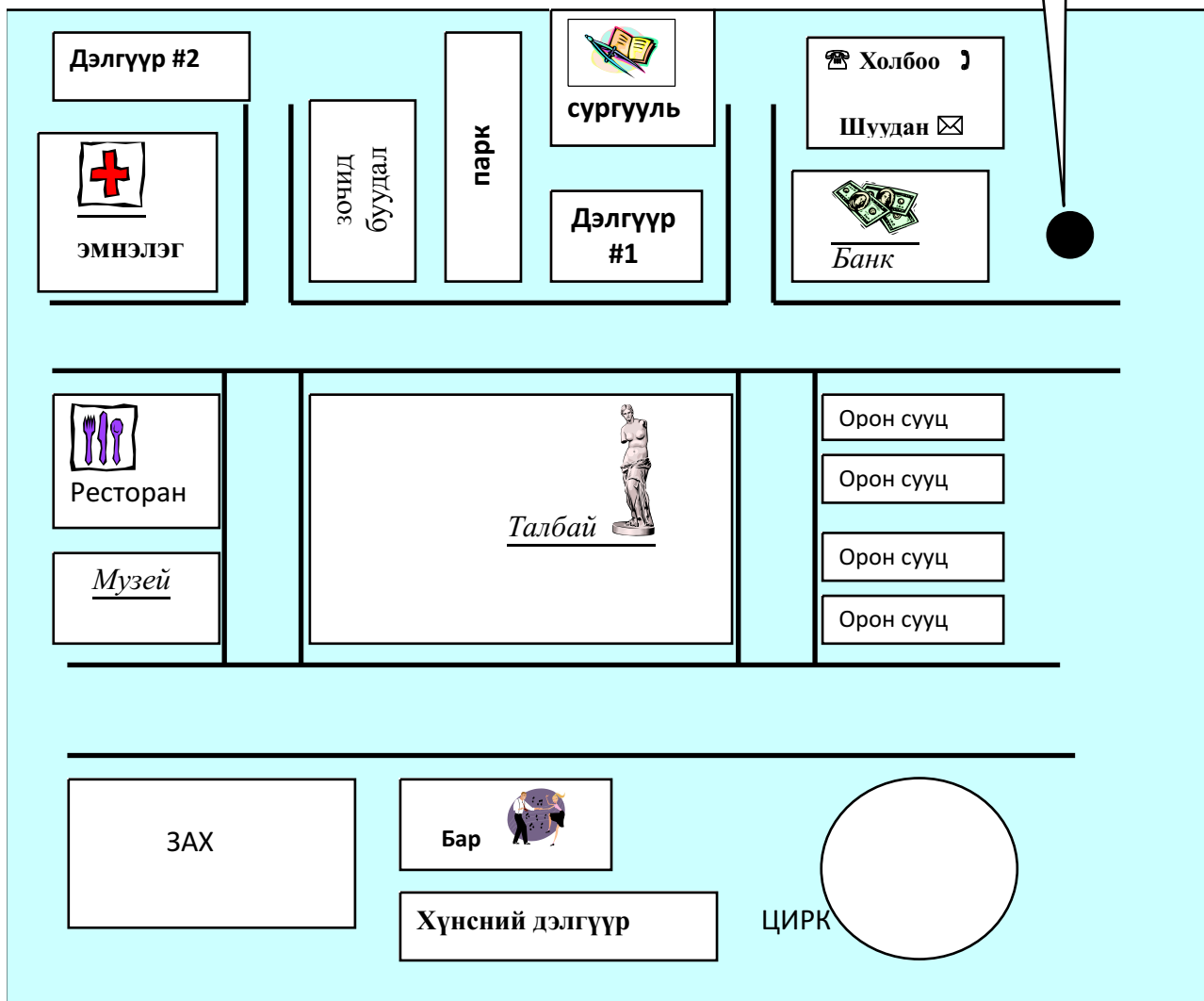
Дэлгүүрийн баруун талд.

Шуудан яаж явах вэ?

Эхлээд чигээрээ яваарай. Дараа нь зүүн тийшээ эргээрэй.

You are here.

Чи энд байна.



Lesson 3

Dialogue

Шинэ үг

New Words

Цаг	Time/hour/o'clock
Хэд /хэдэн	How many
	How much
Хэдэн цаг	What time
Хагас	Half
-д/т дутуу	Till (incomplete)
-аас ⁴ өнгөрөх	Passed (when telling time)
Хаашаа	Where to
Хэдээр	By how much (how much money?)
Хэдээс	From when (what time)
руу ² /луу ²	To/toward
-ын дараа	After
-ын өмнө	Before
-аар (машинаар)	By (by car)

Амьбр: Хаашаа явах вэ?

Жолооч: Сант (руу).

Амьбр: Хэдээр явах вэ?

Жолооч: 3000-аар.

Амьбр: Хэдээс (хэдэн цагаас) явах вэ?

Жолооч: 30-н минутын дараа. 9-н
цагт.

Амьбр: Одоо цаг хэд болж байна?

Жолооч: Найм гуч / Найм хагас (8:30).



Морь



Машин



Тэмээ



Автобус



Мотоцикл



Явган



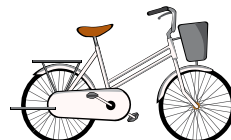
Усан онгоц



Такси



Трактор



Дугуй



Онгоц



Микр

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. TIME

- In Mongolian, the 24-hour system is used to give the time formally:

16:00 Арван зургаан цаг.
22:15 Хорин хоёр цаг арван таван минут

- The Mongolian word цаг is equivalent to the following English words:

O'clock Одоо 5-н цаг болж байна.
It is now 5 o'clock.

Hour Би тэнд нэг цаг байсан.
I was there for one hour.

Time Явах цаг боллоо.
It is time to go.

Clock Цаг ханан дээр байна.
The clock is on the wall.

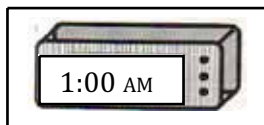
Watch Энэ таны цаг уу?
This your watch?

- When you talk about an action in the sense of definite time, the suffixes –д or –т are added to the word цаг.

Би долоон цагт босдог.
I get up at seven o'clock.

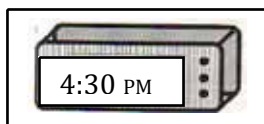
Би долоон цагт босдог.
Би долоод босдог.

ХЭДЭН ЦАГ БОЛЖ БАЙНА?/ ЦАГ ХЭД БОЛЖ БАЙНА?



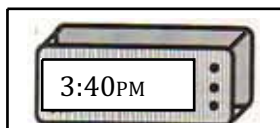
Нэг цаг болж байна.
Нэг цаг.
Нэг.

One o'clock.
It is one.
One.



Дөрвөн цаг гучин минут.
Дөрөв хагас
Дөрөв гуч

Four o'clock thirty minute.
It's four thirty.
Half past four.



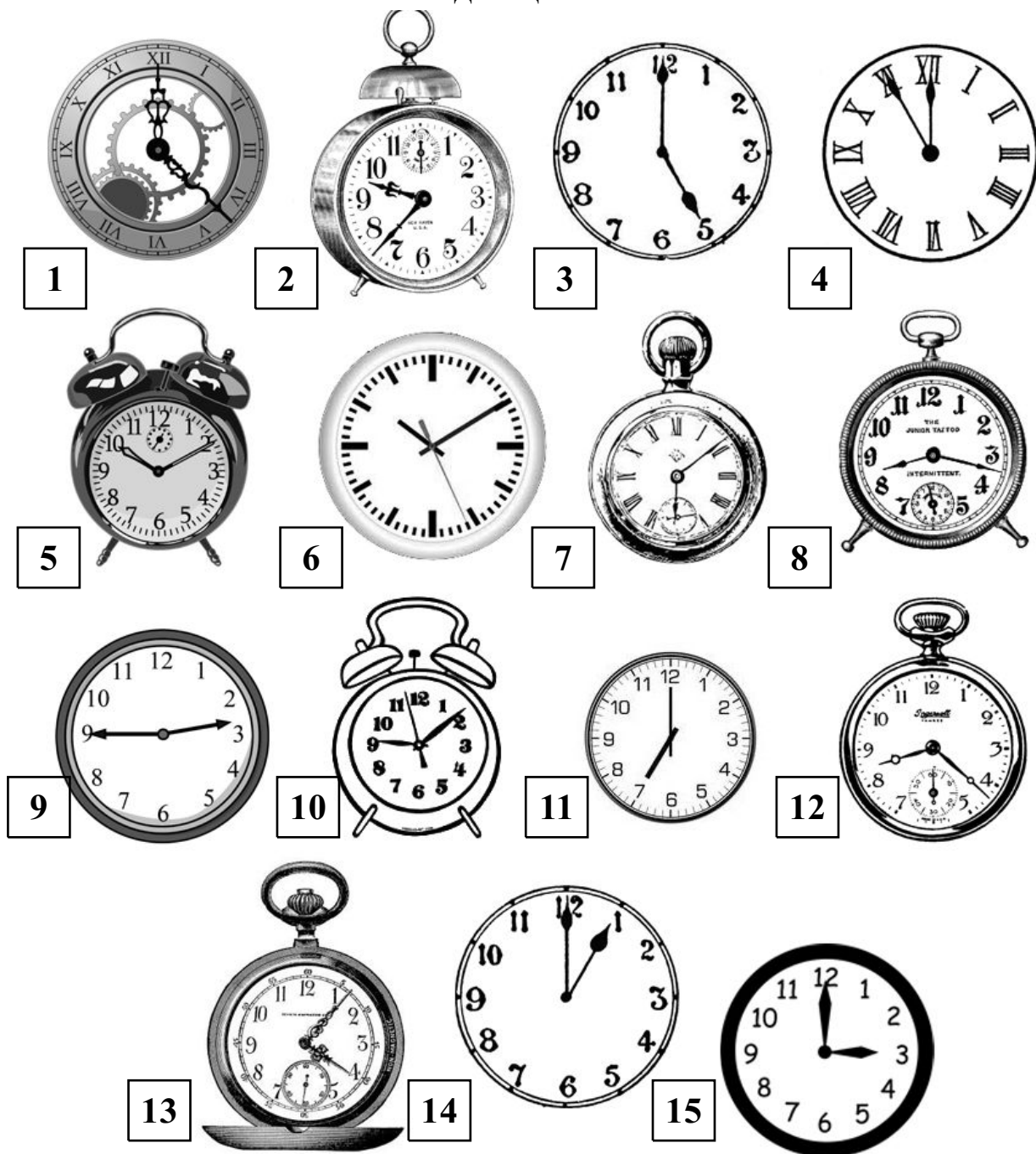
Гурван цаг дөчин минут.
Дөрөвт хорь дутуу байна.
Гурав дөч.

Three-forty.
Twenty minutes till four.
Three forty.

Exercise 1. Fill in the blanks. Нөх.

1. _____ цаг _____ байна?
2. _____ хэд болж _____?

Exercise 2. What time is it? Хэдэн цаг болж байна вэ?



Example: Одоо 6 цаг болж байна.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 2. _____ | 3. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 5. _____ | 6. _____ |
| 7. _____ | 8. _____ | 9. _____ |
| 10. _____ | 11. _____ | 12. _____ |
| 13. _____ | 14. _____ | 15. _____ |

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. THE SUFFIXES, -РҮҮ / -РҮҮ AND -ЛУУ / -ЛҮҮ

The suffixes *руу/рүү* and *луу/лүү* denote direction, as expressed in English by the prepositions “to” and “toward”. Spelling: *луу/лүү* is used after a noun that ends with *-р*, and *руу* and *рүү* is used for everything else. This suffix is written separately from the noun.

Дархан (руу) явмаар байна.
I want to go to Darkhan.

Би Хонгор (луу) явна.
I'll go to Khongor.

Note: In speaking, these suffixes can sometimes be left out. But in some cases, this suffix must be present. For example, “Би гэрлүүгээ явна” (I will go to my home).

2. USING ‘ХЭД’ TO ASK ‘HOW MUCH’, ‘HOW MANY,’ AND ‘WHAT TIME’

ХЭД is a short form of **хэдэн**. The question “хэд” means “how much”, “how many” and “what time, what day, etc” and can take noun case endings depending on the context.

Example:

Хэдээс When we talk about the time, it means “from what time.”
 When we talk about prices, it means “ from what price” for bargaining.

Манай хичээл 8:00-аас эхэлдэг.
Our class starts from 8:00.

Хичээл найман цагаас эхэлдэг.
Хичээл наймаас эхэлдэг.

Хэдээр expresses **хэдэн** төгрөгөөр by how many tugriks (for how many tugriks).

3. EXPRESSING ‘LATER’ WITH ДАРАА AND ӨМНӨ

- **Дараа** means “later”
- **Өмнө** means “before” or “earlier”

Examples:

Дараа ресторанд идье.
Let's eat at a restaurant later.

Өмнө гэрийн даалгавраа хийсэн.
I did my homework earlier.

- **Дараа нь** is translated as “after that”
- **Өмнө нь** is translated as “before that”

Одоо хуралтай байна. Дараа нь ярья.
Now I have a meeting. Let's talk after that.

Тэр одоо хичээлтэй байна. Тэр өмнө нь хоол хийсэн.
S/He has a lesson. S/He made food before that.

- These phrases are transitional nouns used to connect actions.

The time post-positions **ДАРАА** and **ӨМНӨ** always follow the genitive case: (-ын, -ийн, -ний, -ны, -н). The use of genitive case ending was seen in Unit Two, Lesson Two.

гучин минутын дараа
in(after) thirty minutes

нэг өдрийн өмнө
one day before











таван цагийн дараа
in(after) five hours

Exercise 1: Translate the sentences into English. Орчуул.

1. Цаг хэд болж байна? _____
2. Миний ширээний цаг эвдэрсэн. (broken) _____
3. Би түүнийг нэг цаг хүлээж байна. (wait) _____
4. Одоо 7 цаг болж байна. _____
5. Хоолны (lunch) цаг болж байна. _____
6. Чи миний бугуйн цагийг харсан уу? _____

Exercise 2: Make a sentence that explains “Where and by what means would you like to go?” Өгүүлбэр зохио.

Example: Дэлгүүр  Би дэлгүүр (лүү) таксигаар явмаар байна.

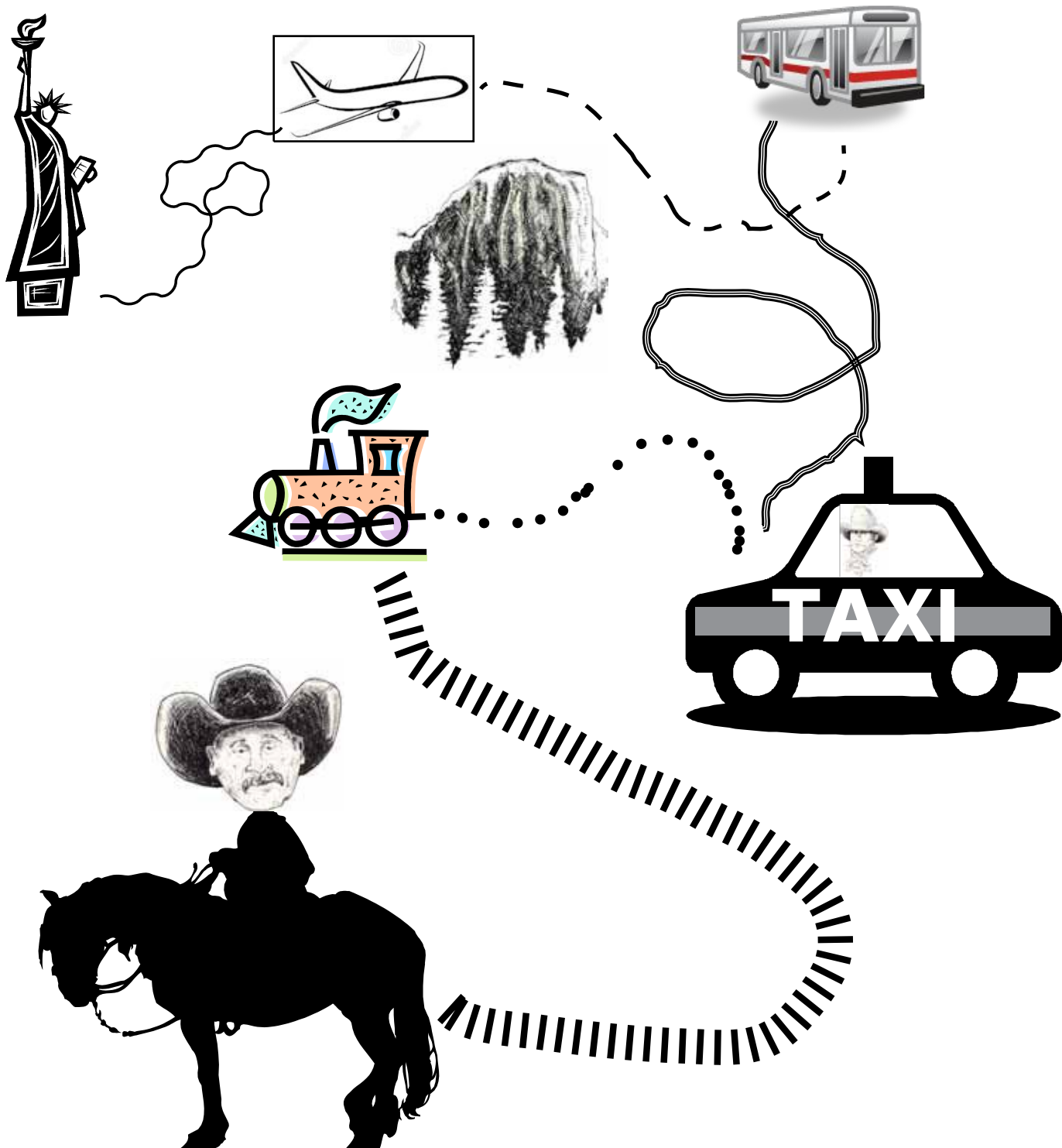
1. Театр -  _____
2. Батын гэр -  _____
3. Дархан -  _____
4. Гуанз -  _____
5. Бар -  _____
6. Зах -  _____
7. Гэр -  _____
8. Хөвсгөл -  _____
9. Сургууль -  _____
10. Улаанбаатар  _____

Exercise 3: Select the appropriate use of дараа or өмнө. Тохирохыг сонго.

Example: Хоёр _____ В _____ би Америкаас ирсэн.
 А. өмнө Б. өмнө нь В. сарын өмнө

1. Би одоо кино үзэж байна. _____ хичээл хийнэ.
 А. дараа Б. дараа нь В. өмнө нь
2. Маргааш хөдөө явна. _____ шинэ цамц авмаар байна.
 А. өмнө Б. нэг цагийн өмнө В. өмнө нь
3. Болдоо 3 _____ хотоос ирсэн.
 А. -н цагийн өмнө Б. -н цагийн дараа В. өмнө нь
4. Одоо завгүй байна. _____ уулзах уу?
 А. өмнө Б. өмнө нь В. дараа
5. Хятад хэл _____ япон хэлний хичээлд суусан.
 А. дараа Б. өмнө нь В. -ний өмнө

Exercise 4: Look at the picture and write about John's trip? Жоны аяллын зургийг хараад бич.



Эхлээд, дараа нь, тэгээд, хамгийн сүүлд нь ...

Жон эхлээд Америкаас Монголд онгоцоор ирсэн. Дараа нь Улаанбаатараас ...

Lesson 4

Шинэ үг

New Words

Хэрэгтэй	Need
Яаж	How
Харин	But
Энд	Here
Тэнд	There
Зочид буудал	Visitor stop (hotel)
Километр	Kilometer
Олон улсын	International
Орон нутгийн	Domestic
Цагийн хуваарь	Schedule/time table
Юугаар	By what
Билет	Ticket
Суудал	Seat
Нийтийн	Regular seat (on the train)
Купе	Sleeper car
Суух	To sit/get in
Буух	To get off
Зогсох	To stop
Гарах	To show/leave/ Go out
Бичүүлэх	To have (something) written

Dialogue

DIALOGUE: TAKING A TAXI

Жолооч: Хаа явах вэ?

Филипп: Багшийн дээд.

Жолооч: За, суу суу.

Филипп: Километр нь хэд вэ?

Жолооч: 800.

(When you are arriving at your destination)

Филипп: Энд бууя.

Жолооч: Энд болох уу?

Филипп: Болно болно. Хэд вэ?

Жолооч: 1000-н төгрөг.

Филипп: За май. Баярлалаа.

Жолооч: Баярлалаа. Баяртай.

DIALOGUE: AT THE TRAIN STATION

Трип: Эндээс Ховд руу юугаар явдаг вэ?

Оюунаа: Онгоцоор. Харин Сэлэнгэ рүү яаж явах вэ?

Трип: Вагоноор.

Оюунаа: Хэд дэх өдрүүдэд явдаг вэ?

Трип: Гурав, тав дахид.

Оюунаа: Хэдэн цагаас явдаг вэ?

Трип: Оройн 6-н цагт.

Оюунаа: Чи билетээ авсан уу?

Трип: Үгүй. Билетээ бичүүлэх хэрэгтэй.

Оюунаа: Ямар үнэтэй вэ?

Трип: Нийтийн вагон 2000, купе 4500-н төг.

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. MEANS OF TRAVEL AND THE QUESTION, ЮУГААР

The question ЮУГААР? is used to explain how or by what means travel happens.

Та нар Дархан руу юугаар явсан бэ?
Автобусаар. How did you all go to Darkhan?
By bus.

Чи Хэнтий рүү яаж явах вэ?
Машинаар эсвэл онгоцоор. How will you go to Khentii?
By car or plane.

2. THE REFLEXIVE ENDING, -AA⁴ (see genitive in supplemental section for more info)

The reflexive ending –aa⁴ reflects or points back to the subject, and is used to show that the object of a sentence is related to or possessed by the subject. It is translated into English using possessive pronouns. For example:

Би алимаа идсэн. Би алим идсэн. Би чиний алимыг идсэн.
I ate my apple. I ate an apple. I ate your apple.

Би алимаа идсэн. Тэр алимаа идсэн. Чи алимаа идсэн.
I ate my apple. S/he ate his/her apple. You ate your apple.

Чи билетээ авсан уу?
Did you get your ticket?

If the reflexive suffix is put after a diphthong or a long vowel, it takes on a “r” at the beginning of the suffix and becomes “гаа⁴”.

Example: Би гэр лүүгээ явна. I will go to my home.

Due to the fact that there is no equivalent of the reflexive suffix in English, a common but incorrect (буруу) way Americans might say “I ate my apple” is “Би миний алим идсэн.” Remember that if there is a word in a sentence that belongs to the subject, it takes on the reflexive suffix.

Culturally, Mongolians are afraid of “jinxing” their road trips. Therefore, many drivers will not drive on “bad” days (usually Tuesdays and Saturdays, but may also vary). Drivers never want to talk about what time the jeep is expected to arrive at its destination. Talking about driving times will jinx the trip, and something bad may inevitably happen (in the mind of the driver and other passengers). Not stopping at овоо (Buddhist holy spots) along the way may also jinx a trip. Therefore, drivers tend to make lots of stops, adding to volunteers’ frustration.

Cultural Note



Exercise 1: Listen to the aimags names and practice the pronouncing them. Аймгуудын нэрийг сонсоод давтаж хэл.

Дархан	Ховд	Орхон	Архангай
Завхан	Увс	Дорнод	Өвөрхангай
Булган	Төв	Хөвсгөл	Өмнөговь
Хэнтий	Сэлэнгэ	Баян-Өлгий	Дундговь
Сүхбаатар	Говь Сүмбэр	Баянхонгор	Дорноговь

Exercise 2: Do role-plays for the following situations. Work in pairs; then change roles. Дүрээр тогло.

1. Tomorrow you are going to go to UB and you need to buy a train ticket.
2. Next Friday you will go to Khovd. You are buying a plane ticket.
3. You have to go to the post office and want to take a cab.

Exercise 3: Write down how you can get to the following aimags or cities. Эдгээр газруудад яаж очихыг бич.

Example: Хотоос Завхан руу юугаар явж болох вэ?
Хотоос Завхан руу онгоцоор, машинаар явж болно.

1. Хотоос Чойбалсан руу юугаар явж болох вэ?

2. Эрдэнэтээс Дархан руу юугаар явж болох вэ?

3. Баян-Өлгийгөөс хот руу юугаар явж болох вэ?

4. Говь-Алтайгаас Баянхонгор луу юугаар явж болох вэ?

5. Хотоос Хэнтий руу юугаар явж болох вэ?

6. Хөвсгөлөөс Ховд руу юугаар явж болох вэ?

Exercise 4: Answer the following questions about the locations of the aimags. Асуултад хариул.

Example: Хэнтий аймгийн зүүн талд ямар аймаг байдаг вэ?
Сүхбаатар, Дорнод байдаг.

1. Ховд аймгийн хойд талд ямар аймаг байдаг вэ?

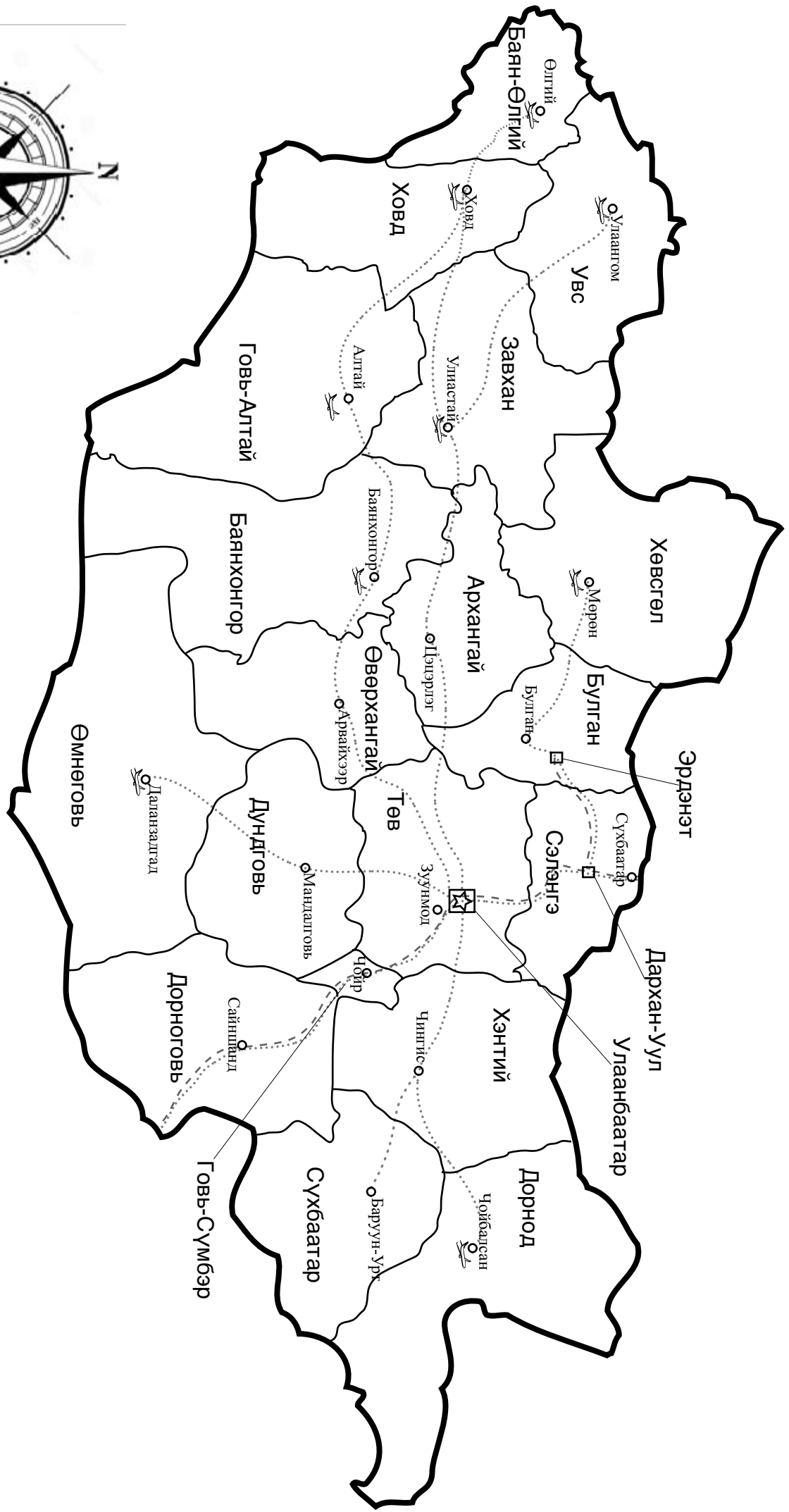
2. Хэнтий аймгийн баруун талд ямар аймаг байдаг вэ?

3. Баянхонгор Дундговь хоёрын хооронд ямар аймаг байдаг вэ?

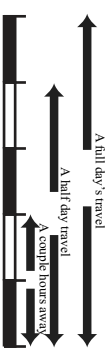
4. Булган аймгийн зүүн талд ямар аймаг байдаг вэ?

5. Өмнөговь аймгийн баруун, зүүн талд ямар аймгууд байдаг вэ?

6. Дорноговь аймгийн хойд талд ямар аймаг байдаг вэ?



..... Road
 - - - - - Train



UNIT FOUR EXIT PASS

Pass One. Translate the following sentences into Mongolian. Орчуул.

1. Please go to your school by car.

2. Is it ok if I go to the city by plane?

3. The horse is between the micro and the motorcycle.

4. The plane will go to Bayan-ulgii at 15:30.

Pass Two. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate suffixes. Тохирох нөхцлүүдийг бич.

1. Би өчигдөр зах_____ машин_____ явсан.

2. Жейк дандаа мотоцикл_____ хот_____ явдаг.

3. Чи хоол_____ халбага_____ ид_____ (please).

4. Зарим хүн театр_____ тэмээ_____ явдаг.

5. Чи монгол ээж_____ монгол_____ яри_____ (please).

Pass Three. Draw the objects in the place that is narrated by your LCF. Багш юмсын байршил хэлж оюутан зурна. Жишээ нь: Бөмбөг ширээ, сандал 2-ын хооронд байна.



Pass Four. Look at the map of the city on page 86. Answer the following questions by giving directions. Зураг хараад чиглэл заасан асуултад хариул.

1. Чи зах дээр байна. Банк руу яаж явах вэ?

2. Чи дэлгүүр 2-т байна. Парк руу яаж явах вэ?

3. Чи музейд байна. Хүнсний дэлгүүр лүү яаж явах вэ?

UNIT 5: CLOTHES

- Expressing clothes preferences
- Identifying names of clothes
- Giving compliments
- Buying clothes

Learning Strategies from N. Gantsetseg, Language and Culture Coordinator

As a Language and Culture Coordinator, I have noticed that PCT/Vs have good Mongolian when they...

Have confidence in language learning.

Listen to the conversations in the market and try to make small talk with others.

Spend more time with community kids by playing games, singing songs, cooking together, etc.

Participate in any activities in the town with locals.

Ignore when people laugh at you and repeat again and again.

Have a language learning self-improvement plan.

Амжилт хүсье!



Lesson 1

Dialogue

ШИНЭ ҮГ

New Words

Харин	But (on the contrary)
Яг	Exactly/exact
Бас	Also/ too
Гоё	Beautiful/nice
Юм(аа)	(emphatic particle)
Өнгө	Color
Хар	Black
Цагаан	White
Улаан	Red
Ногоон	Green
Цэнхэр	Sky blue
Хөх	Dark blue
Шар	Yellow
Улбар шар	Orange
Бор	Brown
Хүрэн	Maroon
Саарал	Gray
Ягаан	Pink
Чернилэн ягаан	Purple
Зохих	Look good on
Таалагдах	To like (people, things)
Таарах	To fit
Өмсөх	To put on/to wear
Зүүх	To put on (accessories; watch, tie, earrings etc.)
Таарах	To fit

Роб: Чи ямар өнгөнд дуртай вэ?

Кен: Ногоон, харин чи?

Роб: Саарал... бас шар.

Кен: Би ч гэсэн саарал өнгөнд дуртай.

* * *

Наака: Чиний цамц их гоё юм(аа).

Жэйн: Тийм байна уу? Чамд таалагдаж байна уу?

Наака: Таалагдаж байна. Чамд яг таарч байна. Гоё зохиж байна.

Жэйн: Өө, баярлалаа.

Many Mongolians have different opinions of what some colors are called, just as some Americans may disagree on what constitutes; dark blue, navy blue, royal blue, etc. For example, your host family may disagree on what shade of blue to call the river, whether it be хөх, цэнхэр, or цайвар цэнхэр keep in mind that colors are relative to those describing them.

Also, adding modifiers can intensify colors. There are many attachments that can be added to colors but using the first syllable of the color and then 'B' can mean; entirely, quite, extremely, etc. Some examples; хав хар=entirely black, нов ногоон=quite green, цэв цэнхэр=very blue, ув улаан=extremely red.

Cultural Note



-ХАН⁴

In English, we have different adjectives to describe specific colors; forest green, ocean blue, and egg-shell white. The suffix -хан⁴ can be added to particular adjectives to create a modified version and thus create a slightly different meaning. For example, 'ойр' means close but 'ойрхон' means quite near, 'цэвэр' means clean or pure and 'цэвэрхэн' means cleanly, purely, neatly.

ХУВЦАС – CLOTHES



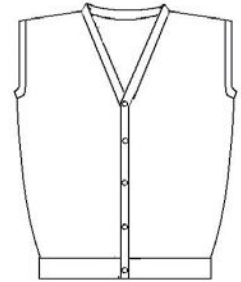
Цамц



Хүрэм/Куртка



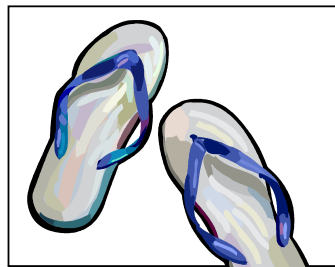
Цув



Хантааз



Футволка



Тапочки



Өндөр өсгийтэй гутал



Ботинк



Оймс



сандаал



Пүүз



Түрийтэй Гутал

ХУВЦАС – CLOTHES



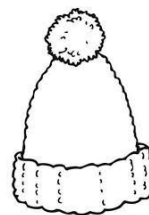
Өвлийн хүрэм



Чихэвч



Бээлий



(Ноосон)Малгай



Өмд



Юбка/Банзал



Палааж/Даашинз



Шорт



Усны хувцас



Унтлагын хувцас



Шляп/Малгай



Шүхэр/Зонтик



Майк



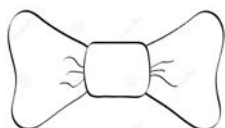
Дотуур хувцас



Зүүлт



Хөхний даруулга/
Левчик



Эрвээхий зангиа



Нүдний шил



Зангиа



Цүнх



Бүс/тэлээ



Түрийвч



Цаг



Ээмэг



Бөгж

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. - Ж/Ч БАЙНА

A. The suffixes –ж and –ч are followed by байна to indicate the present continuous tense: am doing, is doing, are doing and was presented in Unit 3, Lesson 3. This tense is formed as follows:

VERB STEM + Ж / Ч БАЙНА.

Тэр цай уу- + ж байна.

S/he is drinking tea.

Би сур- + ч байна.

I am studying.

B. The interrogative is formed as follows:

VERB STEM + Ж/Ч БАЙНА УУ?/ВЭ?

Чи юу хий- + ж байна вэ?

What are you doing?

Тэр цамц ав- + ч байна уу?

Is s/he buying the shirt?

C. The negative is formed as follows:

VERB STEM + АА⁴ГҮЙ БАЙНА

Би алим ид + ээгүй байна.

I am not eating an apple.

Тэр цонх хаа + г + аагүй байна.

He is not closing the window.

2. MODAL PARTICLES

Modal particles intensify, moderate, or else change statements according to the present mood of the speaker.

ЮМ(АА)

Наадах чинь их гоё юм(аа).

That IS beautiful.

Ч

Дорж ч ирсэн, Бат ч ирсэн.

Both Dorj and Bat came.

ТИЙМЭЭ

Oh yes.

(emphasis)

3. БАС

The usage of different meanings of БАС depends on the context.

and

Би загас бас өндгөнд дуртай.

I like fish and eggs.

too, also

Би ч бас (дуртай).

I also like them.

Also, too

1-р хүн: Би гоё гутал авмаар байна.

I want to get sweet boots.

2-р хүн: Би ч бас.

Me too!

4. DATIVE CASE ENDINGS

With the verbs to fit (таарах), to like (таалагдах), and to look good on (зохих) the subject should be in dative case: -д ending for to me, for me, on me

Надад энэ цамц таалагдаж байна.
I like this shirt.

Түүнд энэ цамц таалагдахгүй байна.
She doesn't like this shirt.

Энэ улаан оймс чамд зохихгүй байна.
These red socks don't look good on you.

Болдод тэр дээл зохиж байна.
Bold looks good in that deel.

Тэр малгай чамд таарахгүй байна уу?
Won't that hat fit you?

Надад энэ өмд яг таарч байна!
These pants fit me just right!

5. COMITATIVE CASE WITH CLOTHING

With the verb өмсөөх (to put on/to wear) the comitative case suffix of –тай³ is required when talking about wearing an article of clothing, use of the present continuous tense with the verb өмсөх, i.e. өмсөж байна, literally means “putting on”. For example, Би бор өнгөтэй өмд өмсөж байна, “I am putting on brown pants”. Би бор өнгийн өмдтэй, “I am wearing brown pants” or Би бор өнгөтэй өмд өмссөн байна, “I put on brown pants.”



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Answer these questions. Асуултад хариул.

1. Та ямар өнгөнд дуртай вэ?

2. Чи ямар өнгөтэй гутланд дургүй вэ?

3. Чамд ямар өнгө таалагддаг вэ?

4. Чиний цамц ямар өнгөтэй вэ?

Exercise 2. Answer the question: Чи юу хийж байна? гэсэн асуултад хариул.

1. идэх

2. өмсөх

3. амрах

4. явах

5. хийх

6. ярих

7. таарах

Exercise 3. Describe what your classmates are wearing. Ангийнхныхаа хувцсыг дүрсэл.

Ех. Кал цэнхэр цамц, саарал өмд, бор гуталтай байна.

Шинэ үг

New Words

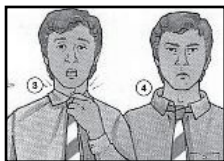
Хэмжээ	Size
Арай том	A bit big
Хэт том	Too big
Тэг тэг	Do as thus (You may)
Томдох	To be big
Том	Big
Бага /жижиг	Small
Хямд	Cheap
Урт	Long
Богино	Short
Шинэ	New
Хуучин	Old (not people)
Цэвэрхэн	Clean
Бохир /заваан	Dirty
Бараан	Dark
Цайвар	Light
Үзэх	To see/watch/experience
Ярих	To speak/bargain
Өмсөж үзэх	To wear (try on)
Багадах	To be small
Жижигдэх	To be small

Dialogue

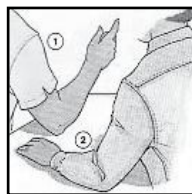
Дарлийн: Эгч ээ! Тэр шар цамцыг үзье.
 Худалдагч: Энэ үү?
 Дарлийн: Тийм. Өмсөж үзэж болох уу?
 Худалдагч: Тэг тэг. Болно.
 Дарлийн: Өө, энэ надад арай том байна. Арай жижигхэн байна уу?
 Худалдагч: Байна байна. Энийг өмсөөд үз дээ.
 Дарлийн: Энэ надад таарч байна. Ямар үнэтэй вэ?
 Худалдагч: Арван мянга.
 Дарлийн: Ярих уу?
 Худалдагч: За, 9-н мянга.
 Дарлийн: За, авъя.

The word **МӨНГӨ** is the general name for money and currency. This word can also mean “coins” but coins are not used nowadays in Mongolia. **МӨНГӨ** is also the word for “silver.”

Cultural Note



Б _ Г _ А _
Т _ М _ О _



Б _ Г _ Н _
_ Р _



З _ В _ Н _
Ц _ Э _ Х _



Ц _ Й _ Р _
Б _ Р _ А _

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. THE SUFFIX -ДАХ

When the suffix –ДАХ⁴ is added to some adjectives, these adjectives are changed into a verb: to be small, to be long, to be dirty.

ADJ.	VERB
Жижиг	жижигдэх
Урт	уртдах
Бохир	бохирдох

Энэ дээл жижиг.	Энэ жижиг дээл.	Энэ дээл чамд багадаж байна.
This deel is small.	This is a small deel.	This deel is small on you.

2. COLLOQUIAL SPEECH IN THE MARKET

ЯМАР ҮНЭТЭЙ ВЭ? (HOW MUCH?)	Хэд гэж байна?	How much is it?
	Хэдэд өгөх вэ?	How much will you give?
	Хэдээс ярьж байна?	How much will you take off?
	Юу гэж байна?	How much is it?

In the market it is possible to bargain the prices. The following phrases are commonly used for bargaining.

Ярих уу? Will you bargain?	Аль хэр ярих вэ? How much will you bargain?
Хэд вэ? Арван тав. Арваас сайн ярьвал авъя.	How much? 15000. If you can bargain to 10000, then I'll take it.
5000-д өгөх үү? Can you give it to me for 5000?	5000-аар авъя. I'd buy it for 5000 tugriks.
The sales people could say: Бага зэрэг ярина. I'll bargain a little bit.	Үгүй, ярихгүй. No, no bargaining.
За, тэг тэг. Okay, you can take it for that price.	Шууд 5000-д ав. You can buy it for 5000.
1200-аар ав. Take it for 1200.	10000-аас ярина. I will bargain starting at 10000.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Make sentences expressing “Let me/us”(Unit 3, Lesson 3) Keep up the word order. Remember that subjects of this verb form should be 1st persons of pronouns in singular and plural. Өгүүлбэр зохио.

Ех. Би, тэр, шар, малгай, үз- Би тэр шар малгайг үзье.

1. Бид, сургууль, яв- _____
2. Би, цонх, онгойлго- _____
3. Бид, энэ, ном, ав- _____
4. Би, чамд, үзэг, өг- _____
5. Бид, маргааш, хот, явган алх- _____
6. Би, тэр, ногоон, гутал, үз- _____

Exercise 2. Put the subjects of the sentences in dative case: -д/т. Зөв хэлбэрт бич.

1. (Би) _____ энэ цамц таалагдаж байна. Надад энэ цамц таалагдаж байна.
2. (Мери) _____ энэ юбка томдож байна.
3. Энэ өмд (чи) _____ таарахгүй байна.
4. Улаан өнгө (тэр) _____ зохидоггүй. (doesn't look well)
5. Миний ботинк (ээж) _____ багадна.

Memorize the following verbs that are used with a dative case.

	өгөх	to give
	хэлэх	to say/tell
ээжид	үзүүлэх	to show
ахад	заах	to teach
түүнд	туслах	to help
Жонд	дурлах	to love/show affection
Сюзанд	гомдох	to be offended
Багшид	хайртай	to love-with (to love)
	уурлах	to be angry at
	итгэх	to trust/believe

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into Mongolian. Орчуул.

1. May I try on this jacket? _____
2. I like this shirt very much. _____
3. This coat is too long for me. _____
4. These shoes are too small for you. _____
5. Do you have a bigger size? _____
6. This dress doesn't fit me. _____
7. Do you have any other colors? _____

Exercise 4. Work with a partner. Ярилц.

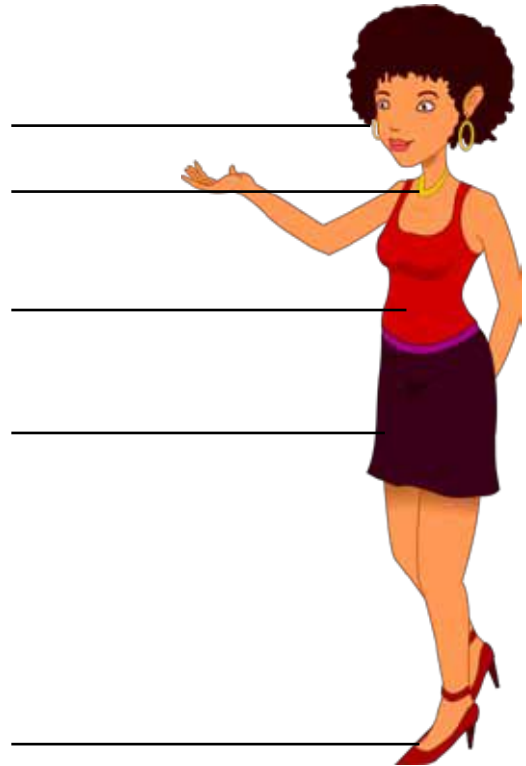
1. You want to buy a jacket. It costs 40000 tugriks and you can bargain the price to buy it.
Чи хүрэм авмаар байна. Дөчин мянган үнэтэй хүрмийг хямдруулж ав.

2. You are buying winter boots. The boots you are looking at are very expensive and too small as well. Ask the seller to bargain the price and to change them for a bigger pair.
Чи өвлийн гутал авч байна. Энэ гутал маш үнэтэй бас арай жижиг харагдаж байна. Чи худалдагчаас арай том, хямд гутал асуу.

3. You need to buy a cashmere sweater. You want to change the color of a sweater and buy it at a cheaper price.
Чи ноолууран (cashmere) цамц авах хэрэгтэй. Чи цамцныхаа өнгийг солимоор байна. Чи хямдхан үнээр цамц авч болно.

UNIT FIVE EXIT PASS

Pass One. Label clothes by putting the correct words in the spaces provided. Заасан хувцсыг нэрлэ.



Pass Two. Multiple choice, complete the sentence with the most appropriate answer. Зөв хариултыг сонго.

1. Энэ _____ таарч байна уу?
 а. чиний б. чи в. чамайг г. чамд
2. Би улаан өнгөтэй _____.
 а. цамцтай б. цамцыг в. цамцанд г. цамц
3. Чи ногоон _____ дуртай юу?
 а. өнгийг б. өнгөтэй в. өнгөнд г. өнгө
4. _____ энэ хар гутал таалагдаж байна уу?
 а. Чамайг б. Чамд в. Чиний г. Чи
5. Миний _____ цэнхэр өнгөтэй.
 а. өмдтэй б. өмдийг в. өмдөнд г. өмд
6. _____ даашинз\палааж их гоё юм аа.
 а. Чи б. Чамайг в. Чамд г. Чиний
7. Тэр малгай _____ зохиж байна.
 а. Крисд б. Крисийн в. Крисийг г. Крис
8. _____ өмсөж үзмээр байна уу?
 а. Чамд б. Чамайг в. Чи г. Чамаас
9. Бор өнгө _____ зохидоггүй.
 а. түүнд б. тэр в. түүнийг г. түүний
10. _____ энэ курткa\хурэм таарахгүй байна.
 а. Би б. Намайг в. Надад г. Миний

UNIT 6: PEOPLE

- Describing one's appearance
- Describing one's daily life
- Describing one's feelings

Learning Strategies from Caitlin Thomas, TEFL, M22

I was sent to Bayan-Ulgii Province, the farthest one from the capital of Mongolia, and one filled with a majority of ethnically Kazakh people, whose first language is Kazakh.

I gathered a lot of Mongolian grammar books, studied when I was free, carried a dictionary, wrote down new words, and made myself immersed in the culture (albeit Kazakh) and spoke as much Mongolian as I could. The sounds are so different and the way the form their questions and statements are really strange to the ear at first. It took about a year and a half to really start understanding the pattern of their language.

I had no ear for Kazakh for the longest time. Upon deciding to stay for a third year, I wanted to move in with a Kazakh family I was really close to. I had been living alone in an apartment for 2 years, and this really hurt me in acquiring both languages. Upon moving in with them, hearing the language every day, being around children who don't understand you don't know their language, and using it every day; my Kazakh language got to a semi-communicable level.

If you don't put yourself in uncomfortable situations, you can never grow. My advice to acquiring languages is: immerse yourself in the culture and don't be afraid to use your language. If you don't try, you can never make a mistake, and if you never make mistakes you will never get corrected.

Amjilt Husyi! Good luck!



Dialogue

ШИНЭ ҮГ

Хамгийн

1. Яасан...!

2. Яасан бэ?

Сайнгүй

Байх

Аль хэр (өндөр)

Тийм гэж үү!?

Бол

Өө тийм үү?

Туслах

Зүгээрээ

Битгий санаа зов

Санаа зоволтгүй

New Words

Extremely (used for the superlative)

How...!

What happened?

Good not (not good)

To be (probably)

To what degree tall? (how tall?)

Yes said? (Is that right? Really?)

Put at the end of a sentence, this can mean “I wonder...” which requests a response

Oh no, really?

To help

No problem

You're welcome.

Don't worry about it

It's okay

No worries

Don't worry

Дорж: Манай ангийн хэн хамгийн өндөр вэ?

Жон: Төрөө

Дорж: Тулгаа Төрөөгөөс өндөр байх аа.

Жон: Тийм гэж үү!? Аль хэр өндөр бол?

Дорж: Жаахан өндөр байх.

Жон: Чи өнөөдөр яасан¹ ууртай байнаа! Яасан² бэ?

Туяа: Ажил сайнгүй байна.

Жон: Өө тийм үү! Би яаж туслах вэ?

Туяа: Зүгээр ээ, битгий санаа зов.

ГАДААД ТӨРХ – APPEARANCE DESCRIPTIONS:



намхан өндөр



чацуу



хөгшин залуу



тарган туранхай



жижиг, дунд, том



хүчгүй



хүчтэй

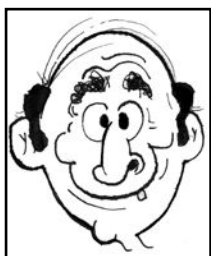


хөөрхөн царай муутай

While царай муутай is unisex, хөөрхөн is used exclusively for children and women. Залуу is not only the adjective for “young”, but it also is a noun meaning “young man”. Therefore, гоё залуу, сайхан залуу, and цэвэрхэн залуу are only for handsome men.

Чацуу is used for people who are the same height as well as the same age.

СЭТГЭЛ ХӨДЛӨЛ - EMOTIONS



Баяртай
Happy
Би баяртай байна.



Сэтгэл хангалуун
Satisfied
Би сэтгэл хангалуун байна.



Догдлох
Excited
Би догдолж байна.



Ядрах
Tired
Би ядарч байна.



Харамсалтай
Sad
Надад харамсалтай байна.



Шоконд орох
Shocked
Би шоконд орсон.



Санаа зовох
Worried
Санаа зовж байна.



Ууртай / уур хүрэх
Angry
Миний уур хүрч байна.

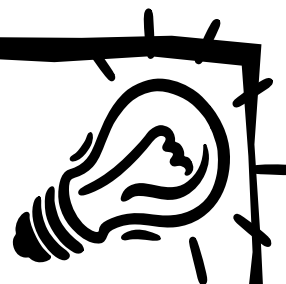


Ичимхий
Shy
Би ичимхий хүн.

Words for feelings in Mongolian are used differently depending on situation, context and subjects. For example:

Happy: I am happy – Надад сайхан байна.
Kids are happy. – Хүүхдүүд аз жаргалтай байна.
Angry: I am angry – Миний уур хүрч байна.
He is angry – Тэр ууртай байна.
Sad: I am sad – Надад харамсалтай байна.
Sad news – Харамсалтай/ таагүй мэдээ

Mongolians may use the same Mongolian phrase to express what are considered different emotions in America. For example: “Би айж байна” sometimes means “I’m scared,” “I’m anxious,” or “I’m nervous.”



GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. COMPARISONS AND SUPERLATIVES.

A. The most widely used comparative degree is built with the ablative case: -аас⁴.

NOUN ¹	NOUN ² + аас ⁴	ADJ	
Жорж	Дэвид + ээс	өндөр.	George is taller than David.
Дэвид	Жорж + оос	намхан.	David is shorter than George.
Чи	над + аас	өндөр.	You are taller than me.
Би	чам + аас	намхан.	I am shorter than you.

Жорж Дэвидээс 2 насаар ах. George is 2 years older than David.
 Дэвид Жоржоос 2 насаар дүү. David is 2 years younger than George.

B. Usually the superlative is expressed with the word “хамгийн” with the meaning “extraordinary, extremely, finally”.

NOUN ¹	хамгийн	ADJ.	NOUN ²	
Тэр ¹	хамгийн	сайн*	сурагч ² .	
S/he ¹	extremely	best	student ² .	(S/he is the best student.)

* хамгийн сайн = шилдэг (this word can mean “the best”)

2. БАЙХ

If байх is used at the end of a sentence, it indicates that the statement is a presumption. So this modal is best translated as ‘probably’ or ‘most likely’. If байх is used together with the particle ‘аа’, then the meaning is similar to a tag question. Very often, sentences with this modal are constructed in the future tense.

Тэр хөгшин их ууртай байх.
 That old man is probably very angry.

Тэр хөгшин их ууртай байх аа.
 That old man is probably very angry (isn’t he?)

3. THE INTERROGATIVE: (АЛЬ) ХЭР

SUBJECT + (АЛЬ) ХЭР ADJECTIVE БЭ/ВЭ?

Чиний эгч аль хэр өндөр вэ?
 How tall is your sister?

Миний эгч маш өндөр.
 My sister is very tall.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Unscramble the sentences. The first word of the sentence begins with a capital letter. Том үсгээр эхэлсэн үгээр өгүүлбэр эхлүүлж зөв дараалалд оруул.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------|
| 1. өндөр, Би, Жоржоос | Би Жоржоос өндөр. | _____ |
| 2. Тэмээ, өндөр, мориноос | | _____ |
| 3. мориноос, Энэ, хурдан, тэр, морь | | _____ |
| 4. цагаан, Цас, цааснаас | | _____ |
| 5. Нараа, хөөрхөн, та нараас | | _____ |
| 6. Туяа, хэлний, туранхай, Манай, монгол, багш, биднээс | | _____ |

Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into Mongolian. Орчуул.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------|
| 1. Her mother is shorter than me. | Түүний ээж надаас намхан. | _____ |
| 2. My grandfather is older than him. | | _____ |
| 3. She is taller than you. | | _____ |
| 4. They are older than us. | | _____ |
| 5. We are stronger than them. | | _____ |
| 6. My sister is thinner than her. | | _____ |
| 7. This pencil is newer than that pencil. | | _____ |
| 8. My friend is older than me. | | _____ |

Exercise 3. Make comparative sentences using the adjectives. Тэмдэг нэрсийг ашиглан харьцуулсан өгүүлбэр зохио.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|-------|
| 1. тарган | Гахай ямаанаас тарган. | _____ |
| 2. туранхай | | _____ |
| 3. намхан | | _____ |
| 4. өндөр | | _____ |
| 5. урт | | _____ |
| 6. богино | | _____ |
| 7. царай муутай | | _____ |
| 8. хүчтэй | | _____ |
| 9. ажилсаг (hardworking) | | _____ |

Exercise 4. Answer the questions. Асуултад хариул.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|-------|
| 1. Чиний найз чамаас аль хэр намхан бэ? | _____ |
| 2. Танайхнаас хэн хамгийн өндөр вэ? | _____ |
| 3. Юу хамгийн цагаан бэ? | _____ |
| 4. Групптээ чи хэн хэнээс дүү вэ? | _____ |
| 5. Чи хамгийн сайн сурагч мөн үү? | _____ |

Шинэ үг

New Words

Нээрээ	1. Really 2. See Grammar Pt. 3
Зочломтгой	Hospitable
Сайхан сэтгэлтэй	Kind
Тусч	Helpful
Хөгжилтэй	Cheerful
Нийтэч	Outgoing
Дуугүй	Quiet/ men of few words
Их зантай	Stiff neck
Томоотой	Good tempered
Бүрэг/ ичимхий	Introverted/ shyness
Нүүрэмгий	Extroverted
Ер нь/ Ерөнхийдөө	In general/ generally

Dialogue

Цэцгээ: Сайн уу Саара? Сайхан амарсан уу?

Саара: Өө сайхан амарсан. Чи сайхан амарсан уу?

Цэцгээ: Сайхан. Өчигдөр юу хийж амарсан бэ?

Саара: Би хашааныхаа айлтай хамт гол явсан.

Цэцгээ: Нээрээ, танай айлын хүмүүс ямаршуу хүмүүс вэ?

Саара: Тэд их сайн хүмүүс бас их зочломтгой. Ээж нь сайхан сэтгэлтэй, тусч харин аав нь их хөгжилтэй, нийтэч хүн байна лээ.

Цэцгээ: Тэднийх хүүхэдтэй юу?

Саара: Тийм. 3 хүүхэдтэй. Том нь оюутан. Тэр дуугай, жаахан их зантай. Харин 2 дүү нь хөөрхөн, томоотой, Жаахан бүрэг байсан.

Цэцгээ: Ер нь монгол хүүхдүүд ичимхий. Харин манай дүү нар их нүүрэмгий.

The word “тарган” in Mongolian does not translate very well into English. The closest translation is the word “fat”. However, there is a very important difference between these two words. “Тарган” has many different uses in Mongolian language. One of the main uses is in describing and asking about one’s herd. “Are your animals тарган? Yes they are.” is a common greeting for herders. Mongolians use targan quite liberally when describing one another. For example: “Which man is your father? Ah, the тарган one.”

Most Mongolian English teachers do not know that the word “fat” has a negative connotation. Therefore, many PCVs are shocked when Mongolian English teachers say things such as, “Who is the fattest student in the room?” and the kids “Oyun is fat!”

PCVs often have varying experiences with this word. Mongolians worry about PCVs’ health and will often give advice. Some PCVs are told “you are skinny, you should become тарган.” At other times, as Mongolians are very honest about appearances, counterparts may playfully call PCVs “тарган”. Traditionally, it has corresponded to a healthy appearance. However, younger, urban, and/or more cosmopolitan Mongolians use “тарган” as a derogative.

Cultural Note



GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. ТЭР ЯМАР ХҮН БЭ? AND ЯМАРШУУ ХҮН БЭ?

These questions are asked to request people's characteristics. However, ямаршуу requests for a vague description of the person. The speaker is not asking for many specific details. The below are more vocabulary that can be used to answer these questions.

Part 1. Тэр сайн/ дажгүй/ давгүй/ гайгүй/ онцгүй/ тааруу / муу хүн
good / decent / decent / ok / dislikeable / a little bit bad / very bad

Part 2	сайхан сэтгэл +тэй	kind hearted-	муухай сэтгэл+тэй	spiteful
	Зөөлөн сэтгэл+тэй	empathetic	хатуу сэтгэл+тэй	insensitive
	Найдвар +тай	reliable	найдвар +гүй	unreliable
	Хариуцлага+ тай	responsible	хариуцлага+гүй	irresponsible
	Нээлт+тэй	an open person	хаалт+тай	a closed person

Part 3

Adjective	Root	
Тусч	туслах	helpful
Харамч	харамлах	stingy
Өглөгч	өгөх	generous
Нийтэч	нийт	outgoing
Ажил хэрэгч	ажил хэрэг	active

2. НЬ: ЭЭЖ НЬ, ААВ НЬ, ТОМ НЬ (other uses of НЬ in supplementary section)

One use of the нь particle, is as a substitute for the word түүний, тэд нарын, and тэдний. For example, instead of saying “Түүний ээж,” one can say “ээж нь.” You can see in the dialogue that Саара uses the нь particle to refer to members of her hashaa family instead of saying “Тэдний ээж, аав.” Note that the нь particle is used because this is not her direct family and she is talking about the family in third person.

3. EXPRESSING, “BY THE WAY...” OR “OH!....” WITH НЭЭРЭЭ

Нээрээ is used in various ways. One way it is used is to express a sudden curiosity. It is difficult to translate this directly, but it can be translated as “By the way.....” or “Oh!.....” The speaker of нээрээ will say something or ask a question that they probably were not planning on asking until that moment. An example of this is in the dialogue.

This is not to be confused with “нээрээ юү?” which inquires about the truth of a statement. The one who says “нээрээ юү?” is usually surprised.

Example:

Зак: Би монгол гэрт хоёр жил амьдарсан.

I lived in a ger for two years.

Ганаа: Нээрээ юү?!

Really?!

4. EXPRESSING FIRST IMPRESSIONS WITH ЮМ БАЙНА ЛЭЭ

Юм байна лээ is used when the speaker wants to express how their first impression was about something or someone. Although the speaker is talking about something that happened in the past, the speaker does not use “байсан” because the speaker still holds this impression.

Example: Крис: Өчигдөр хорхог идэж үзсэн. Амттай юм байна лээ.

Yesterday I tried horhog. It was delicious.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Match the proper characteristic or emotion word to the situation. Тохирох үгийг бич.

Word Bank:

бүрэг	нийтэч	ууртай	харамч	шоконд орсон
	ЗОЧЛОМТГОЙ	тусч	ичимхий	

1. Everyone was very late to the teachers' meeting at your school. The director of your school looks very_____.
2. Mongolians are famous for being very _____. If you stop at a nomad's ger at any time of day, they will invite you in and feed you.
3. He never gives me money when I need it. He is so _____.
4. I wish I was as _____ as her. He is always meeting new people wherever he goes.
5. He is a man of few words. He always seems serious, but I hear he is a very nice guy. He is just a little _____.
6. Don't jump out like that! I was _____
7. That little girl is always hiding behind her mother. She is very _____.
8. After my ger burnt down, my HCA (host country agency) helped me buy new clothes, find a place to stay, and fed me. They were so _____.

Exercise 2. Answer the following questions with complete sentences. Асуултад хариул.

1. Чиний хамгийн сайн найз ямаршуу зан чанартай хүн бэ?

2. Чи ямаршуу хүүхэд байсан бэ?

3. Монгол хүмүүс ер нь ямаршуу юм байна вэ?

ШИНЭ ҮГ

New Words

Өглөө	Morning
Бүр/ болгон	Every
Дандаа	Always/often/all the time
Үргэлж	Frequently
Тогтмол	Always/regularly
Өдөр бүр	Every day
Голдуу	Mostly/in most cases
Ихэвчлэн	Almost always
Заримдаа	Sometimes
Хааяа	Seldom
Огт	Never
Ер нь	Usually
Хичээл	Class/lesson
Өглөөний цай	Morning's tea/ breakfast
Өдрийн цайнд(аа)	Afternoon tea/ for lunch
Өдрийн цай/хоол	Afternoon tea/meal (lunch)
Оройн хоол	Dinner
Хөгжим	Radio/music
Сонин	1. News (newspaper) 2. interesting (weird)
Анх удаа	First time
Нэг удаа	Once
Хоёр удаа	Twice
Эхлэх	To begin/start
Дуусах	To finish
Тарах	To finish (class, work)
Сонсох	To listen

Dialogue

Дорж: Чи өглөө бүр кофе уудаг уу?

Жон: Үгүй ээ, заримдаа би сүү уудаг.

Харин чи өглөөний цайндаа юу идэж уудаг вэ?

Дорж: Сүүтэй цай уугаад жаахан боов иддэг.

Дорж: Танай хичээл 9-өөс эхэлдэг үү?

Жон: Ер нь 9-н цагт эхэлдэг, хааяа 9 хагаст эхэлдэг.

Дорж: Харин чи орой юу хийдэг вэ?

Жон: Голдуу ном уншдаг, хааяа телевиз үзэж, хөгжим сонсдог.

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

Common words used with this tense: дандаа, заримдаа, хааяа, etc. (always, sometimes, occasionally, etc). The adverbs always answer the question “how (often)?”

Би хааяа хот руу явдаг. Би заримдаа бууз иддэг. Тэр дандаа ус уудаг.
I rarely go to the city I sometimes eat buuz. S/he always drinks water.

Би дандаа гол явдаг. Тэр заримдаа гол явдаг. Тэд гол огт явдаггүй.
I always go to the river. S/he sometimes goes to the river. They never go to the river.

Сэм заримдаа мах иддэггүй.
Sam sometimes doesn't eat meat.



The adverb “огт” means “never”. This adverb requires negative suffix –даг⁴гүй from a verb.

Би мах огт иддэггүй. Тэр хичээл огт хийдэггүй
I never eat meat. He never studies.

2. HABITUAL ACTION AND THE SUFFIX, -ДАГ⁴

-ДАГ⁴, As mentioned in Unit 2, Lesson 3 and Unit 3, this suffix (-даг⁴) expresses that the action continues for an indefinite time or that the action is habitual.

Interrogative	Negative	Question
VERB STEM + ДАГ ⁴	VERB STEM + ДАГ ⁴ ГҮЙ	VERB STEM + ДАГ ⁴ ВЭ/ ҮҮ ?
ид- + дэг	ид- + дэггүй	ид- + дэг вэ? ид- + дэг үү?
Би хааяа хонины мах иддэг.	Би дандаа хонины мах иддэггүй.	Чи ямар мах иддэг вэ? Чи хонины мах иддэг үү?
I occasionally eat mutton.	I don't always eat mutton.	What kind of meat do you eat? Do you eat mutton?

3. TIME

When you talk about an action in the sense of definite time, the suffixes –д/т are added to the word цаг.

How long?	5 цаг	When?	5 цагт
	5 hours		at 5:00

The same rule is applied for the words долоо хоног, сар, жил, etc.

Би долоо хоногт нэг удаа спортын ордонд очдог..

I go to the sports club once a week.

The words өглөө, өдөр, орой don't have any suffix for the question when.

Ямар сайхан өглөө вэ!

What a nice morning!

Би өглөө дасгал хийдэг.

I exercise in the morning.

4. SIMULTANEOUS ACTION AND THE SUFFIX, 'Ж/Ч'

The suffix -ж/ч can be used when two actions occur simultaneously. In many situations, different subjects will be performing different actions.

When one action follows the other action, the actions are not as closely linked as simultaneous actions. As a result, these actions are expressed with the suffix -аад⁴.

verb¹-ж/ч ... verb²

Ээж хоол хийж, аав цай ууж байна.

Mother is cooking and father is drinking tea.

verb¹-аад⁴ ... verb²

Ээж босоод галын өрөөнд орсон.

Mother got up and entered the kitchen.

Би зурагт үзэж хөгжим сонсдоггүй.

I don't watch TV and don't listen to music.

Миний найз хоёр хоноод буцна.

My friend will stay for 2 days and then return.

5. INTERJECTIONS

*If verb² (main verb) is already negated, then verb¹ is automatically negated as well.

This is a group of words that have no lexical or grammatical meanings in themselves. They can be repeated or combined with other interjections or particles. Their main function is to express human feelings. You should remember that they are translated differently depending on the context, and intonation is very important to express feelings.

A. Calling/ attracting attention:

Hey.

Hey, come here!

хүүе, хөөе, хөөш

Хөөе, чи нааш ир!

B. Difficulty/ despair/ pain:

Ouch! Someone has stomped on my foot!
Oh shoot! I've totally forgotten his order

Ёо ёо, хөл гишгэчихлээ.
Яанаа, би таг мартчихаж.

C. Displeasure/ disagreement:

Yeah, right!/No way!
Bullshit

юу гэж, үгүй шүү, яалаа гэж
Яг ш дээ

D. Agreement/ pleasure:

OK, let's do that За тэгье.
Enough, let's stop За, больё.
Wow, that's terrific. Аяа, үнэхээр сайхан даа.

E. Understanding/ exclamation:

Oh, I see Өө тийм үү?
Well, I don't know Аа, бүү мэд
OK, OK I won't forget it. За за, яасан ч мартаггүй.

F. Uh/ Uhm / Er...

Нөгөө.....
Юу.....
За байз....
Нөгөө нэг.....



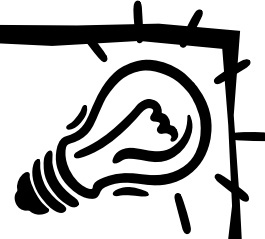
PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Change the verb forms of the sentences into simple present tense. Энгийн одоо цагт бич.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------|
| 1. Гэрлээ ундаа ууж байна. | Гэрлээ дандаа ундаа уудаг. | _____ |
| 2. Эмээ сүүтэй цай ууж байна. | | _____ |
| 3. Багш шалгалт авсан. | | _____ |
| 4. Ахаа, цонхоо хаа! | | _____ |

(In reference to Exercise 1, Number 3)

While in English, a student might say “I am going to take a test” or a teacher might say “I am going to give a test,” Mongolians will say the opposite. The Mongolian mindset is that a teacher will “take” the test (шалгалт авах) from the student and the student will “give” the test (шалгалт өгөх) to the teacher. This can be particularly confusing for TEFL volunteers, whose English teachers will regularly make the mistake in English by saying “I will take a test today.”



- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| 5. Чи дэлгүүр яваарай. | _____ |
| 6. Хүүхдүүд гадаа тоглож байна. | _____ |
| 7. Би найзаасаа захиа авсан. | _____ |
| 8. Тэр сургуульдаа явсан. | _____ |

Exercise 2. Give negative answers. Үгүйсгэсэн хариулт өг.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Чи бүжиглэдэг үү? | Үгүй, би бүжиглэдэггүй. |
| 2. Хэн чамд ихэвчлэн хоол хийж өгдөг вэ? | _____ |
| 3. Танай хичээл өглөө 8 цагт эхэлдэг үү? | _____ |
| 4. Чи хааяа хэнд тусалдаг вэ? | _____ |
| 5. Чи усанд сэлдэг үү? | _____ |
| 6. Чиний аав Германаар ярьдаг уу? | _____ |
| 7. Танайхан дандаа гуанзанд хоол иддэг үү? | _____ |

Exercise 3. Write down questions for the answers. Тохирох асуултыг бич.

- | |
|---------------------------------------|
| 1. _____ |
| Би ихэвчлэн өглөө 1 цаг орчим гүйдэг. |
| 2. _____ |
| Би хятадаар бага зэрэг ярьдаг. |
| 3. _____ |

UNIT SIX EXIT PASS

Pass One. Choose the appropriate answer. Тохирох үгийг сонго.

1. Тэр хүн надад хэзээ ч мөнгө өгдөггүй. Тэр маш их _____.
A. Харамч Б. Хөгжилтэй В. Томоотой Г. Тусч
2. Чамд тусламж хэрэгтэй юү? Монголд _____ хүмүүс олон байдаг болохоор чамд тусална.
A. Харамч Б. Хөгжилтэй В. Томоотой Г. Тусч
3. Хүүхдүүд ангид их _____ байна. Яагаад гэвэл захирал хичээл дээр сууж байна.
A. Харамч Б. Хөгжилтэй В. Томоотой Г. Тусч
4. Тэр _____ болохоор би түүнтэй уулзмаар байна. Би
түүнтэй яриад зөндөө инээдэг.
A. Харамч Б. Хөгжилтэй В. Томоотой Г. Тусч

Pass Two. Write in the opposites. Эсрэг үгийг нь бич.

1. намхан _____
2. тарган _____
3. хөгшин _____
4. хөөрхөн _____
5. хүчгүй _____
6. том _____

Pass Three. Translate the sentences into Mongolian using -ж/-ч or -аад⁴. Эдгээр нөхцөлийг ашиглан доорх өгүүлбэрүүдийг орчуул.

1. Yesterday I ate lunch with my mom, read a book, and went to my school.(use -ж/-ч)

2. Tomorrow I will maybe go to the market, then I will buy fish, and then I will buy a new shirt.

3. I woke up at 9 o'clock, I put on my clothes, and then ate breakfast. I will probably be late to school.

UNIT 7: HEALTH

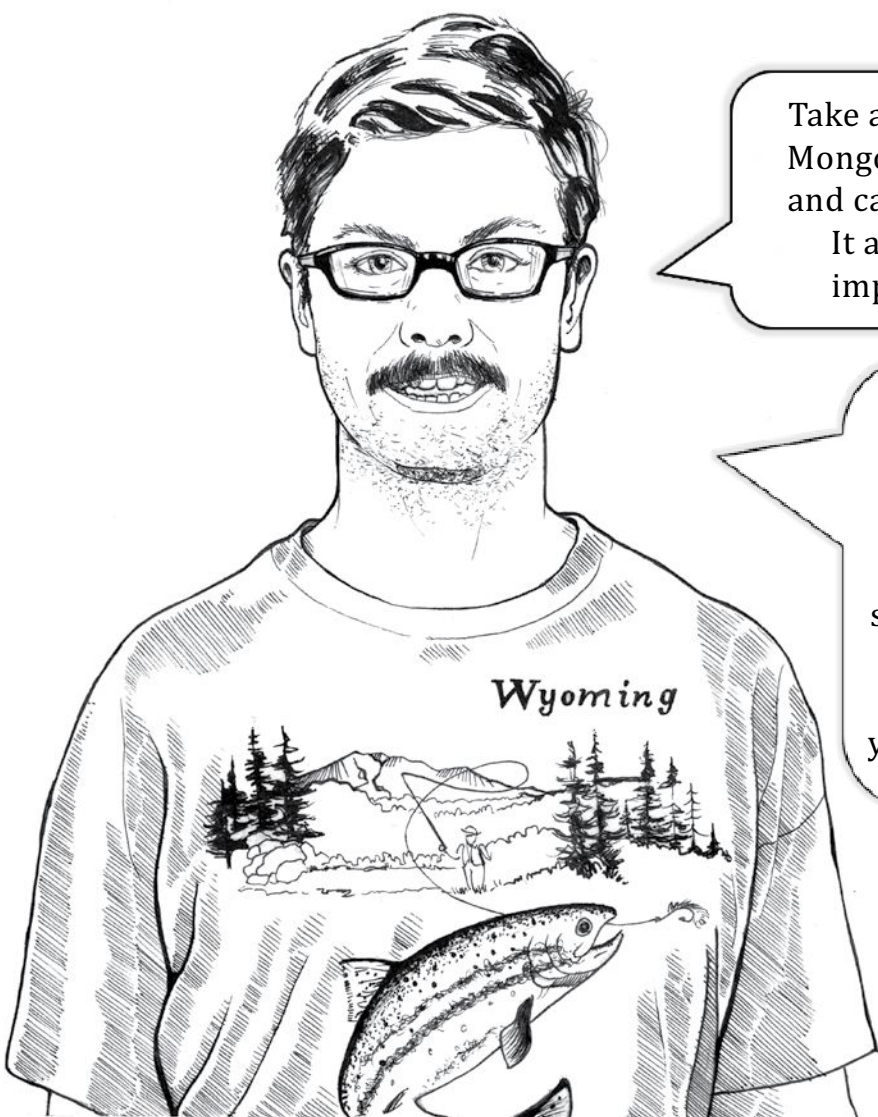
- Expressing needs and asking for help
- Describing physical condition
- Discussing health conditions

Learning Strategies from Cal Brackin, CYD, M24

I cut poster board into flashcards and then hole punch them to keep them on key rings. I write in cursive on one side because that's all you'll see at site. On the other side I draw a picture because studies have shown that immersion learning and eliminating as much English as possible improves language learning.

Take an interest in learning the Mongolian script. It is beautiful and can also help with spelling. It also shows effort and is impressive to Mongolians.

Practice your cursive! It is very important that you know how to write and read in cursive. To start your learning, go online and find Russian writing lessons that will show you how to connect your Cyrillic letters. After that, write everything in Cyrillic and get help from your counterparts with your writing.



Lesson 1

Dialogue

Шинэ үг New Words

Хэрэгтэй	Need
Тааруу	Not good
Ханиад томуу	The flu
Гүйлгэх	Diarrhea
Хоолны хордлого	Food poisoning
Эм	Medicine
Халуурах	To get hot (to have a fever)
Халуунтай байх	To have a fever
Бөөлжих	To vomit
Чадах	To be able/can
Туслах	To help
Залгах	To call/ to connect
Утсаар ярих	To call/to phone
Эм уух	To take medicine
Өвдөх	To be hurt/to be sick
Эмчид үзүүлэх	To see a doctor
Дотор муухайрах	To have motion sickness
Чи яасан бэ?	What happened with you?

ON THE PHONE

Трип: Байна уу?

Дорж: Байна. Чи өнөөдөр яасан бэ?

Трип: Миний хоолой өвдөөд-

Дорж: -Эмчид үзүүлсэн үү?

Трип: Үгүй, үзүүлээгүй.

Дорж: Үзүүлэх хэрэгтэй. Тэгвэл эм уух хэрэгтэй. Надад эм байгаа.

Трип: Уучлаарай, монгол эм үүж болохгүй.

Дорж: Одоо чиний бие яаж байна?

Жон: Тааруу байнаа. Их халуураад байна. Би өнөөдөр хичээлдээ явж чадахгүй нээ. Чи надад туслахгүй юу?

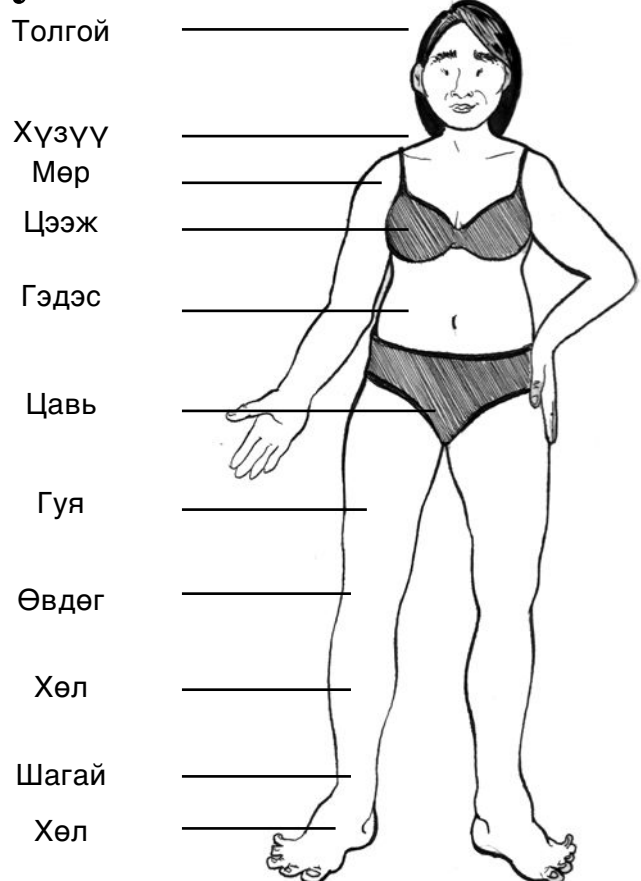
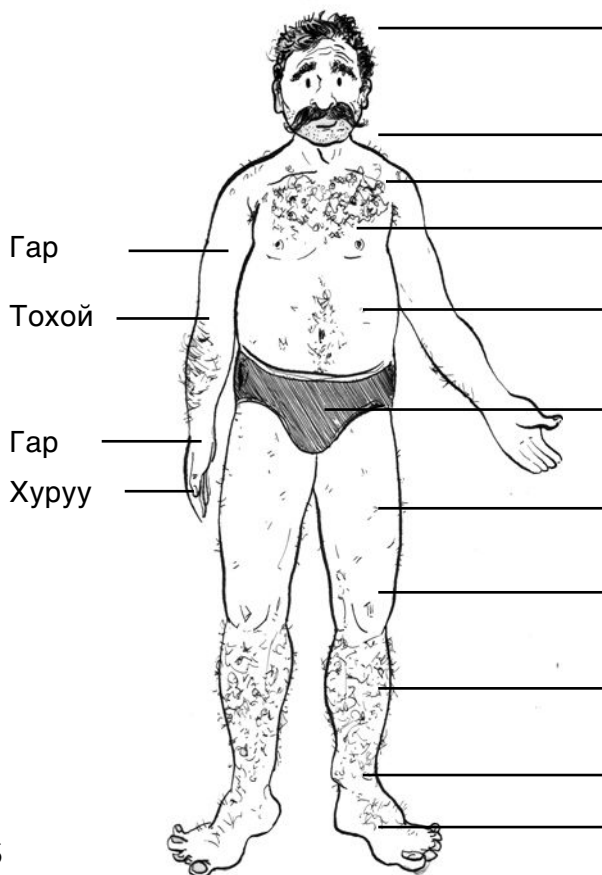
Дорж: Тэгэлгүй яахав! Яаж туслах вэ?

Жон: Захиралд намайг өвчтэй гэж хэлээд өгөөч.

Дорж: За тэлье тэлье.

This is an instance of reported speech. You will learn about it in the next lesson so if it doesn't make sense right now, don't worry. We just got ahead of ourselves is all.

The Body / Бие



**ЯАСАН БЭ? ЮУ ЧИНЬ ӨВДӨЖ БАЙНА (ВЭ?)
МИНИЙ гэдэс ӨВДӨЖ БАЙНА.**



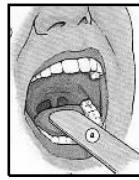
толгой



гэдэс



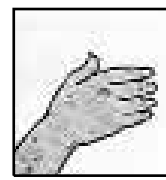
нуруу



хоолой



шүд



гар



хөл

ЯАСАН БЭ? / ЮУ ЧИНЬ ӨВДӨЖ БАЙНА (ВЭ?)



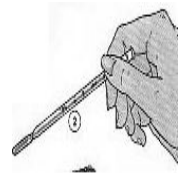
Би **ханиад**тай байна.
Би ханиад хүрсэн.



Би гараа **зүссэн**
(гараа огтолчихлоо)



Миний хөл
хугарсан.



Би **халуун**тай байна
Би халуураад байна

You can ask about someone's health in many different ways.

Та /чи яасан бэ?

What happened?/ What's wrong with you?

Та/ чи өвдөө юү?

Are you sick?

Таны/ чиний бие яаж байна?

How are you feeling?

Таны/ чиний бие зүгээр биз?

Are you feeling alright?

The answers to the questions can be given generally.

Миний бие сайн.

I am fine.

Гайгүй байна.

I am OK.

Тааруу.

I am not feeling good.

Ханиад (томуу)

Cold (the flu)

Хамрын ханиад

Runny nose

Хоолны хордлого

Food poisoning

Огиудас хүрэх

To be nauseous

Дотор муухайрах

To have motion sickness

The Face / Нүүр

Хөмсөг



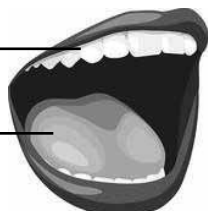
Сормуус

Нүд

Mouth / Ам

Шүд

Хэл



Үс

Дух

Чих

Хацар

Хамар

Уруул

Эрүү



GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. EXPRESSING THE NEED TO DO SOMETHING, 'ХЭРЭГТЭЙ'

The word хэрэгтэй can be placed after a noun and a verb.

A. This word is used with other verbs in the infinitive form as a verb phrase expressing a need to do something .

SUBJECT	OBJECT	VERB(infinitive)	ХЭРЭГТЭЙ. (хэрэггүй)
Жон	эмнэлэг	явах	хэрэгтэй.
John needs to go the hospital.			

B. хэрэгтэй also expresses a need for objects. In this form, the subject must be in the dative case.

SUBJECT + д/т	OBJECT	ХЭРЭГТЭЙ. (хэрэггүй)
Жонд	эмч	хэрэгтэй.
John needs a doctor.		

Надад	түлээ	хэрэгтэй.
I need fuel.		

C. In the negative form (хэрэггүй), the modal verb expresses a lack of need.

Надад архи хэрэггүй.
I don't need vodka.

D. As an adjective, this word might be translated as “useful” in the positive form and “useless” or “unnecessary” in the negative form.

2. EXPRESSING, 'MUST' USING THE MODAL VERB, 'ЁСТОЙ'

A. The modal verb ЁСТОЙ (must) has the same usage as “хэрэгтэй”, but it conveys a stronger meaning. This word is only used like “хэрэгтэй” with verbs.

SUBJECT	OBJECT	VERB	STEM* +Х ЁСТОЙ. (ёсгүй)
Би	захиралтай	уулзах	ёстой.
I must meet with the director.			

B. Likewise, the strength of the negative form is also greater.

Чи архи уух ёсгүй.
You must not drink vodka.

C. Used as an adjective, this modal verb might be translated as “necessary” or “mandatory” in the positive form. and “unethical,” “wrong,” or perhaps even “forbidden” in the negative form. Please note that the root here, “ёс,” is used in “ёс зүй,” the Mongolian translation of ‘ethics’. Hopefully this gives you a notion of the gravity of the word – it deals with things that, in all reasonable circumstances, should be performed.

MODAL VERBS AND YOU!

From Wikipedia as of March 13th, 2014: “A modal verb (also modal, modal auxiliary verb, modal auxiliary) is a type of auxiliary verb that is used to indicate modality – that is, likelihood, ability, permission, and obligation. Examples include the English verbs can/could, may/might, must, will/would, and shall/should.”

At this point, you’ve learned “чадах”, and you just learned “ёстой” and “хэрэгтэй” some other common and useful modal verbs are “боломжтой,” which roughly translates as “possibility-with,” and “заавал,” which is used to discuss things that are compulsory, mandatory, or one is otherwise obligated to do. “Заавал” is often used by directors and managers in telling their subordinates what they must do, often in a chastising tone.

As noted in this previous lesson, the subject of a sentence using these verbs (with the exception of “чадах”) will be in the dative case. Roughly translated, “чамд монгол хэл хэрэгтэй” would be “to you Mongolian is needed”. You need to learn Mongolian. People might tell you that using modal verbs.

3. EXPRESSING “CERTAINLY” OR, “OF COURSE”, ‘–ЛГҮЙ ЯАХАВ’

The suffix –лгүй яахав is used in special combinations meaning “certainly” or “of course.” This suffix is added to a verb that one will certainly perform. This is used in situations of emphasis, whereas the word мэдээж is more commonly used to express certainty.

Та надад тусалж чадах уу?	Can you help me?
Чадалгүй яахав.	Certainly, of course.
Та надтай явах уу?	Will you go with me?
Явалгүй яахав.	Certainly, of course.

4. EXPRESSING “TO DO SOMETHING FOR”, ӨГӨХ

The verb өгөх (to give), when combined as an auxiliary with a verb, means “to do something for someone.”

Би эмч рүү залгаад өгье.	I’ll call the doctor for you.
Би эмийн сан яваад өгье.	I’ll go to the drugstore for you.
Би бичээд өгье.	I’ll write it down for you.

5. MAKING REQUESTS, -ААД⁴ ӨГӨӨЧ

For making requests the following structure is used: -аад⁴ өгөөч.

Та надад аяга кофе аваад өгөөч.

Would you bring me a cup of coffee?

Та надад энэ бичгийг уншаад өгөөч.

Would you read this note for me?

At this point, you've seen two forms of making requests – the suffix “-аарай⁴” and the suffix “-аач⁴”. Both are common, but they are used in slightly different contexts. Typically, “-аарай⁴” is used in well-wishing (ie, “сайхан амараарай” - “please rest well”) and in situations where the request is reasonably expected (ie, when a teacher asks their students to sit down, “суугаарай!”). The request form “-аач⁴” is used in situations where the requested action would not happen otherwise (ie, “надад ном өгөөч” - “give me the book”). Though this rule is generally followed, between these two areas of request is certainly some gray area in which either request form is acceptable. As you learn the Mongolian and see it in context, you will become much better at recognizing which form is most acceptable in which situations.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Put the words in parentheses in dative case: -д/т. Хаалтан доторх төлөөний үгийг өгөх оршихын тийн ялгалд бич.

- Ех. (Би) ____надад____ улаан харандаа хэрэгтэй.
1. (тэд) _____ дулаан хувцас хэрэгтэй.
 2. (Эгч) _____ машин хэрэггүй.
 3. (Бид) _____ энэ ном их хэрэгтэй.
 4. (Тэр) _____ цэвэр ус хэрэгтэй.
 5. (Чи)_____ миний утасны дугаар хэрэгтэй юу?

Exercise 2. Choose the correct word. Зөв үгийг сонго.

- Ех. ____ Надад____ (надад, би) одоо эмч хэрэгтэй байна.
1. _____(тэр, түүнд) Дархан руу галт тэргээр явах хэрэгтэй.
 2. Миний монгол найз амттай хуушуур _____(хийж, хийх) чадна.
 3. Чи монгол хоол хийж _____ (сурах, сурч) ёстой.
 4. Би Доржид _____(туслах, тусалж) хэрэгтэй.
 5. Саара эмчид үзүүлэх _____ (чадна, хэрэгтэй)

Exercise 3. Translate into Mongolian. Орчуул.

Ех . I need to go to the food market. _ Би хүнсний зах явах хэрэгтэй.

1. We need to see our PC doctor. _____
2. They must help their friends. _____
3. He doesn't need Mongolian traditional medicine. _____
4. Jeff must not take my book. _____
5. Do you need a doctor? _____

Exercise 4. Answer the following questions. Асуултад хариул.

1. Чи хаашаа явах хэрэгтэй вэ? _____
2. Чиний гэдэс заримдаа өвддөг үү? _____
3. Чи монгол эмчид үзүүлэх ёстой юу? _____
4. Чи Энх тайвны корпус руу залгаж чадах уу? _____
5. Чи найздаа яаж тусалдаг вэ? _____

Exercise 5. Give a positive answer to the questions using the form -лгүй яахав. -лгүй яахав -г ашиглан асуултад хариул.

- Ех. Та Жеймс Бондын киног үздэг үү?
_____ Үзэлгүй яахав. _____
2. Та Бетховений хөгжмийг сонссон уу?

 3. Та хоол хийж чадах уу?

 4. Та өглөө бүр гүйдэг үү?

 5. Та аав ээждээ дандаа захиа бичдэг үү?

6. Чи энэ тухай багшид хэлсэн үү?

7. Чи сагс тоглодог уу?

8. Та нар гэрийн даалгавраа хийсэн үү?

9. Та надад тусалж чадах уу?

Exercise 6. Change the sentences into the form: -аад⁴ өг- to ask for someone's help. Өгүүлбэрийг -аад⁴ өг -ийг ашиглан бусдаас тусламж хүссэн утгатай болго.

Би чамд ээжийн захиаг уншаад өгье.

I'll read mother's letter for you.

Чи надад ээжийн захиаг уншаад өгөөч.

Would you read mother's letter for me?

1. Би дэлгүүрээс шинэ бяслаг авмаар байна. _____

2. Би эмч дуудмаар байна. _____

3. Би хамтран ажиллагч руугаа утсаар ярмаар байна _____

4. Эмээд шөл хиймээр байна. _____

Exercise 7. Using the situations provided, explain what you or others need, need to do, or must do. Доорх нөхцөлийг ашиглан чи юу хийх хэрэгтэй/ ёстой-гоо тайлбарла.

1. You have a deadline for a Peace Corps committee you are working on. You must submit 3 documents to your regional manager by 5 o'clock today. Explain to your counterparts why you are not available today.

2. You have been sick all weekend, and it doesn't look like it will get better in time for work on Monday. After calling the medical officers, they have advised you to take 3 days of bed rest, taking a particular medicine from your medical kit 3 times a day with food. Call your director and explain that you will be fine, but won't be at work for the next 3 days.

3. It's been 3 days after the first snowfall, and you still have not received the fuel from your HCA that you requested one week previously. You've been borrowing fuel from your хашаа family, but you feel bad leeching off them like that. The contract that your HCA signed with Peace Corps stipulated that your HCA would provide your fuel. Explain to the director/accountant that they must provide you with fuel or you might die. (to be cold = “даарах”, to freeze to death = “даарч үхэх”)

Mongolians and Americans express politeness in different ways. In English, in order to express politeness, we are very indirect with our requests. However, other English speakers understand this indirectness so miscommunications don't usually occur. Consider the following examples:

- “Can you help me?” – this phrase literally means “do you have the ability to help me” but we understand that someone is asking for help when they say this.
- “I was wondering whether it would be okay to borrow your shirt for the evening.” This phrase really means “I want to borrow your shirt, give it to me” but we have to be indirect to be polite.
- “Do you think that it would be possible to borrow 10000 tugriks?” – we don't say, “give me money.” If we did, the other person would consider us rude in English.

In Mongolian, this type of indirectness does not exist when making requests. Requests are made directly, and this directness is reflective in their mannerisms. Some Americans find this direct system a little uncomfortable at first. They may get offended when someone comes up to them and says, “give me 10000 tugriks.” Or, they may feel uncomfortable when the father of the household tells his wife, “give me food.” Remember, these are just cultural differences.

Cultural Note



Lesson 2

Dialogue

Шинэ үг New Words

Яагаад	Why
Гэсэн	Said (that)
Гэж хэлсэн	Said that
Бие	Body
Цус	Blood
Арьс	Skin
Яс	Bone
Эрүүл мэнд	Health
Өвчтөн	Patient
Аюулгүй	Safe
Аюултай	Dangerous
Тариа	Injection
Зүү	Needle
Массаж/иллэг	Massage
Ардын эм	Traditional medicine
Цус алдах	To lose blood (to bleed)
Тариа хийх/тарих	To give a shot
Өвчтэй	To be sick
Тариулах	To receive a shot (medicine)
Толгой эргэх	To feel dizzy
Хэвтэх	To stay in a bed (to lie down)

ХИЧЭЭЛ ДЭЭР

Дорж: Давид өнөөдөр яагаад ажилдаа ирээгүй вэ?

Трип: Тэр өнөөдөр өвчтэй гэж хэлсэн, Хичээлдээ ирж чадахгүй гэсэн.

Дорж: Тэгээд эмчид үзүүлсэн үү?

Трип: Үгүй гэсэн.



In Mongolian, the polite form of 'to go to the bathroom' is directly translated as 'to correct the body,' 'бие засах.' You might see this on restrooms to signify that they are restrooms.



GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. THE VERB ‘ГЭХ’ FOR NAMES

The verb “гэх” should be familiar to you as it is used for people’s names.

Намайг Чимгээ гэдэг.

My name is Chimgee.

Түүний даргыг Дулам гэдэг.

Her boss’s name is Dulam.

2. THE VERB ‘ГЭХ’ FOR “TO SAY, TO TALK”

The verb “гэх” also has the meaning “to say, to talk” and is very important in direct and indirect speech. You will notice that the speech reported comes before the reporting words. In English it might look like “‘I can’t come to class’ he said.” However, the speaking subject is still typically put at the beginning of the sentence. Instead, it would maybe be “He ‘I can’t come to class’ said.”

a. For Direct Speech the actual words that were said are quoted. Direct speech is often used in story telling.

Багш “Чи монгол хэлээ давтах хэрэгтэй” гэж хэлсэн.

Teacher “You Mongolian language review need-with” that said.

(The teacher said, “You need to study your Mongolian Language.”)

Надя “Хурал 2 цагт эхэлнэ” гэж хэлсэн.

Nadia “Meeting two o’clock-at begin-will” that said.

(Nadia said “The meeting will start at 2 o’clock.”)

b. For Indirect Speech, what was said is reported, but the exact words are not necessarily repeated. If there are two subjects in the speech, the subject of the statement should be in accusative case: намайг, түүнийг, etc.

Эмч намайг хэвтэх хэрэгтэй гэж хэлсэн.

Doctor me lie down need-with that said.

(The doctor told me to stay in bed.) * би –намайг accusative case

Аав Болдыг эмчид үзүүлэх хэрэгтэй гэж хэлсэн.

Father Bold doctor-at show need-with that said.

(My father said that Bold needs to see a doctor.) * Болд- Болдыг

If a sentence uses the same subject twice (when said in English), do not use the subject with ‘гэж хэлсэн’. Use it only with one of the subjects.

Тэр маргааш Улаанбаатар явна гэж хэлсэн.

S/he tomorrow Ulaanbaatar go-will that said.

(She said that she’ll go to UB tomorrow.) she – she

When explaining that something was said to you specifically, using the dative form “надад” helps to specify the ‘direction’ of the reported speech.

Ганаа багш Жоныг ирээгүй гэж надад хэлсэн
Teacher John come-did-not that to-me said
(Teacher told me John did not come.)

3. THE SHORT FORM, ‘ГЭСЭН’

Гэсэн is the short form of гэж хэлсэн and it is used much more frequently as well.

Эмч намайг эм уух хэрэгтэй гэж хэлсэн.
Эмч намайг эм уух хэрэгтэй гэсэн.

4. ASKING, “WHY?” WITH ‘ЯАГААД’ AND ‘ЯАХ ГЭЖ’

The most common forms of asking why are “яагаад” and “яах гэж.” You will notice that they both derive from the same base of “яах”, which is also related to the question word “яаж.”

These two forms can be used fairly interchangeably. For example,

Чи яагаад явсан бэ? Why did you go?
Чи яах гэж явсан бэ? Why (For what purpose) did you go?

To see the way the word “гэж” is used in explaining intentions, examine the following example.

Би туслах гэж явсан. I went to help.
Би найзтайгаа уулзах гэж явна. I will go (in order) to meet with my friend.

If you only learn and use “яагаад”, you will be understood, but understanding how these conjunctions work in explaining causality and reasons for doing things will help you understand the speech of others.

5. EXPLAINING WHY (BECAUSE)

The conjunctions “яагаад гэвэл,” “тийм болохоор,” and “тийм учраас” are usually used for expressing the reason for an action. A whole phrase or sentence showing the reason precedes the main sentence. “Яагаад гэвэл” is translated as the reason for this is, for, or because. “Тийм учраас” is probably best translated as “from this reason” or “for this reason.” “Тийм болохоор” is probably best translated as “due to this” or “because of this.” “Яагаад гэвэл” and “тийм болохоор” are both very common in colloquial language. Please see in the following examples how the conjunctions are used in the sentences. You will also see these words in other contexts where people are expressing reasons for doing things, causal relationships, and their intentions in general. We have given you these words in the “тийм _____” format for ease of use. Simply use these at the beginning of the second sentence that you say.

Би монгол хэл сурах хэрэгтэй. Яагаад гэвэл би Монголд амьдарна.
I need to learn Mongolian. Because I will live in Mongolia.

Би удахгүй хөдөө явна. Тийм учраас баяртай байна.
I will go to the countryside soon. Because of this (from this reason) I am happy.

Тамхи татах эрүүл мэндэд муу. Тийм болохоор би тамхинаас гарах ёстой.
To smoke cigarettes is bad for one’s health. Because of this I must give up smoking.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Change the quoted speech to direct speech. Дам яриаг дам бус болго.

1. Багш: “Маргааш шалгалттай.” Багш маргааш шалгалттай гэсэн.
2. Аав: “ Би маргааш хөдөө явна.” _____
3. Туяа: “ Бүжгэнд хамт явъя.” _____
4. Билл: “ Надад номоо өгөөч.” _____
5. Өвөө: “ Миний толгой өвдөж байна. _____
6. Эгч: “ Би орой 8 цагт ирнэ.” _____

Exercise 2. Change the direct speech into indirect speech. There are two subjects in each sentence. Дам яриаг дам бус болго.

Аав: “Чи зурагт удаан битгий үз” гэж хэлсэн.
Аав намайг зурагт удаан битгий үз гэж хэлсэн.

1. Багш: “ Жорж самбарт бичээрэй” гэж хэлсэн.

2. Эмээ: “ Охин цайгаа уусан уу” гэж асуусан. (asked)

3. Дорж: “ Гэрлээ амрах хэрэгтэй” гэж хэлсэн.

4. Женни: “ Өнөөдөр Макс өвчтэй” гэж хэлсэн.

5. Эгч: “ Би орой 8 цагт ирнэ.”

Exercise 3. Explain yourself! Fill in the reasons or actions based on what information is given. Шалтгааныг нөх.

1. _____ яагаад гэвэл миний гэдэс өвдөж байна.
2. Жонхор эмчид үзүүлэх хэрэгтэй. Яагаад гэвэл _____
3. Миний гэдэс өвдөж байна. Тийм болохоор _____
4. Чи яагаад хар кофенд дуртай вэ? _____
5. _____? Би өөх иддэггүй. Яагаад гэвэл _____
6. _____. Тийм учраас би Улаанбаатар явах хэрэгтэй.

UNIT SEVEN EXIT PASS

Pass One: Requests. Translate the following sentences into Mongolian. Орчуул.

1. Please buy me 2 kilograms of beef from the store

2. Could you give me that dictionary?

3. Please call the driver. Ask him what time he will leave today.

Pass Two: Describing Your Health. Use the health words provided to explain that you are sick/injured. Доорх үгсийг ашиглан өөрийнхөө эрүүл мэндийн тухай бич.

1. хутга, хуруу, цус алдах

2. дутуу чанасан үхрийн мах, хоолны хордлого

3. том чулуу, хөлийн хуруу, хугарах (to be broken)

Pass Three: Explaining Needs. Translate the sentences into Mongolian. Орчуул.

1. I need to see a doctor.

2. John needs to take medicine.

3. Our school must call Peace Corps.

4. I must not walk because my leg is broken.

5. You are obligated to pay my electric bill.

UNIT 8: SEASONS & WEATHER

- Discussing the weather
- Discussing the seasons

Learning Strategies from Zak Murray, TEFL, M24

Use the book! If you don't finish all of the activities with your LCF's, then you can do the activities with your host family members. All of the directions are translated and little host brothers and sisters love to help!

Continue using the book after PST and reviewing sections throughout your service. When you get to site you'll have unfinished exercises that you can go back and do.

Challenge yourself by picking out a grammar point and then using it somehow in your next Mongolian conversation.

If you are musically motivated then learn songs for those inevitable karaoke nights or unexpected requests. Also, you've got two years to learn or practice a musical instrument like the guitar and you can easily find song books so you can develop into a crowd pleasing, Mongolian song performer or a smooth, serenading casanova.



Lesson 1

Dialogue

Шинэ үг New Words

Магадгүй	Maybe
Сэрүүн	Cool/fresh
Дулаан	Warm
Бороо	Rain
Бороотой	Rainy
Бүрхэг	Cloudy
Цэлмэг	Clear
Харанхуй	Dark
Шороо	Dirt
Мөндөр	Hail
Бороо орох	To rain
Хүйтрэх	To get cold
Дулаарах	To get warm
Хайлах	To be melted
Шуурах	To rage/ to blow
Утаа	Smoke (pollution)
Бохирдол	Pollution
Цаг агаар	Weather

Хулан: Маргааш хот явах уу?
 Стэси: Явна.
 Хулан: Манай найз хот их утаатай гэсэн.
 Стэси: Тийм үү?
 Хулан: Тийм. Маск зүүж байгаарай.
 Стэси: За. Чи цаг агаарын мэдээ сонссон уу?
 Хулан: Сонссон. Цас орно гэсэн. Цас орвол хүйтэрч магадгүй. Чи дулаан хувцас өмсөж яваарай.
 Стэси: За тэгнэ ээ.
 Хулан: Чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?
 Стэси: Би 3 хоногийн семинарт суугаад ирнэ. Намайг ирэхэд манай гэрийг галлачихсан байж чадах уу?
 Хулан: Чадна чадна. Харин чи хотоос гарахаасаа өмнө утасдаарай.
 Стэси: За тэгье. Би утсаар ярина аа.

Дулаан+хан=дулаахан

Quite warm

The suffix –ХАН⁴ is used in order to intensify the meaning. In English, such forms are expressed with an adverb like 'quite, rather'. The final consonant 'н' is dropped when the suffix is added.



+ дулаан (нэмэх 10)
 - хүйтэн (хасах 10)
 O хэм/ градус 10 хэм дулаан /хүйтэн

Өнөөдөр Дарханд.

Багавтар үүлтэй, түр зуурын бороо орно.
 Салхи баруунаас зүүн тийшээ 5-7 м/сек байна.

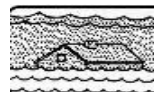
МАРГААШ ТЭНГЭР ЯМАР БАЙХ ВЭ?



багавтар үүлтэй



солонго татах



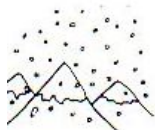
үер



салхитай



бороо орох



цас орох



нартай /цэлмэг



үүлтэй / бүрхэг

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. EXPRESSING, “POSSIBLY”, “MIGHT” OR “MAYBE” WITH ‘БАЙХ’ AND ‘МАГАДГҮЙ’

Both байх (when it follows a verb) and магадгүй mean possibly, might, or maybe. Магадгүй expresses a lower possibility than байх.

Subject verb stem+ж/ч + магадгүй.

Subject verb infinitive + байх.

Цас орж магадгүй.

Цас орох байх.

It might snow.

It will probably snow.

Жишээ нь:

Би үүнийг хийж чадахгүй

Жон хичээлдээ ирэх

Монгол Америкаас хүйтэн

} байх.

Би үүнийг хийж чадахгүй

Жон хичээлдээ ирэхгүй

Монголд Америкаас хүйтэн

} байж магадгүй. (All tenses, future negative)

Би хот явж

Оюунаа багш надтай уулзаж

Манай найз Монголд ирж

} магадгүй. (Positive future tense!)

2. EXPRESSING DESIRE WITH -ААСАЙ⁴

For expressing one’s wish or desire, Mongolians add the suffix –аасай⁴ to the verb stem. Remember, the forms of –аасай⁴ are as follows: –аасай, –ээсэй, –оосой, –өөсэй.

Бороо ороосой.

I wish it would rain.

Хичээл хурдан тараасай.

I wish class were over soon.

For negation, битгий is used before a verb for a negative desire.

Бороо битгий ороосой.

I wish it would not rain.

Хичээл битгий хурдан тараасай.

I wish class were not over soon.

3. THE MANY FORMS OF 'ОРОХ'

Орох is most commonly used as 'to enter' or 'to come in'. However, in some situations the meaning changes.

	ОРОХ	ГАРАХ
To snow	цас орох	
To rain	бороо орох	
To have tea (lunch)	цайндаа орох	
To attend class	хичээлд орох	
To get a job	ажилд орох	ажлаас гарах
To go to school for the first time	сургуульд орох	сургуулиас гарах
To take a shower/bath	усанд орох	
To visit family or friends	айлд орох	
To be in a difficult situation	хүнд байдалд орох	хүнд байдлаас гарах
To learn to speak	хэлд орох	
To be in shock	шоконд орох	
To go to store/ market	дэлгүүр/ зах орох	
To begin drinking, smoking	архи, тамхинд орох	архи, тамхинаас гарах

Орох is also used on public transport in the city to ask if a bus goes to a certain stop or place. While using явах is not grammatically incorrect, colloquially people use орох. Жишээ нь: Нарантуул орох уу? Их дэлгүүр орох уу?

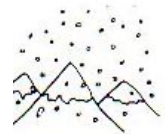
Орох versus Явах.

Sometimes it appears that орох and явах have the same meaning, or can be used interchangeably. Зах явъя and зах орьё both appear to convey the same meaning. You are going to the market. However, when you use орох, the listener understands that you have a specific purpose in mind. You are going to the market to buy goods. Or, Шуудан орьё, might tell the listener that you are going to the post office specifically to mail post cards, or complete another action.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Write what the pictures mean. Зургийн тайлбарыг бич.



Exercise 2. Add the suffix –хан⁴ to the words below and make sentences. Доорх үгнүүдэд –хан⁴ дагавар залгаад өгүүлбэр зохио.

1. Сэрүүн _____
2. Дулаан _____
3. Сайн _____
4. Жижиг _____
5. Цэнхэр _____
6. Гоё _____

Exercise 3. Write sentences expressing your wishes. Хүслээ илэрхийлэх өгүүлбэр болго.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| 1. Нар гарах | Нар гараасай. | Нар битгий гараасай. |
| 2. Цас орох | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Бороо орох | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Дулаахан болох | _____ | _____ |
| 5. Захиа ирэх | _____ | _____ |
| 6. Хөдөө явах | _____ | _____ |
| 7. Хотод үлдэх | _____ | _____ |

Exercise 4. Write sentences predicting the weather. Цаг агаарын тухай таамаглал дэвшүүл.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Цас орох | Маргааш цас орж магадгүй. | Маргааш цас орох байх. |
| 2. Бороо орох | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Цасаар шуурах | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Халуун болох | _____ | _____ |
| 5. Мөндөр орох | _____ | _____ |
| 6. Салхилах | _____ | _____ |
| 7. Хүйтрэх | _____ | _____ |
| 8. Дулаарах | _____ | _____ |

Exercise 5. Change the sentences to express probability.
Өгүүлбэрүүдийг загварын дагуу өөрчил.

Ээж ажлаасаа 5 цагт ирнэ.

Ээж ажлаасаа 5 цагт ирэх байх.

Ээж ажлаасаа 5 цагт ирж магадгүй.

1. Эгч Америкаас залгана.

2. Тэд нар чамд тусална.

3. Багш маргааш шалгалт авна.

4. Би 2 жилийн дараа Америк явна.

5. Сайн дурын ажилтнууд монгол хүмүүстэй ажиллана.

Exercise 6. Translate the sentences into Mongolian. Орчуул.

I don't want John to be late for class.

Жон хичээлээс битгий хоцроосой.

1. I wish young people would stop smoking.

2. They wish she would learn Mongolian well.

3. The teacher wants him to go home soon.

4. We don't want Sarah to be sick.

5. I wish she would understand (ойлгох) me well.

SPECIAL GRAMMAR POINT!

THE CONDITIONAL TENSE: БОЛЗОЛТ ЦАГ

Why is the conditional tense important? There will be a lot of things in your life in Mongolia that you aren't sure about or could have been different.

Plus, people in general enjoy hypothesizing. Master болзолт цаг and you can have all sorts of conversations about what would happen if spaceships landed in Mongolia, or about how your younger brother would have stolen your camera if you had been home for Tsagaan Sar. (Spaceship is сансрын хөлөг, if you were wondering.)

Байхад and байхдаа are used in simultaneous events. Намайг хоол хийж байхад сансрын хөлөг энд буусан! When I was making food, a spaceship landed here!



The suffix –ВАЛ⁴/БАЛ⁴/БОЛ indicate the conditional (болзолт) tense. –Вал⁴/бал⁴ can be roughly translated as “when” or “if” in “if-then” sentences, but does not represent the same “when” used in simultaneous events.

- вал, -вол, -вэл, -вөл complying with vowel harmony: гар+вал,
- бал, -бол, -бэл, -бөл for verb stems ending with the consonants “в, л, м”: эхэл+бэл,

Conditional 1: Either may be used with the simple present tense, -даг⁴, or the simple future tense, -на⁴. This is used for situations that can happen, will happen, or are generally causally related.

- “When”, in general conditional statements.

Ширүүн	бороо	орвол	үер	болдог.
Very heavily	rain	come-when	floods	happen.
When it rains very heavily, floods occur.				

Аавыг	ирвэл	бид	хоол	иднэ.
Dad	come-if	we	meal	eat-will
If Dad comes, we'll eat.				

- “If” in “if-then” statements. Хэрвээ translates as “if”.

Хэрвээ үйл үг + вал⁴ + үйл үг (simple present tense / simple future tense).

Хэрвээ та энэ номыг уншвал их юм сурна.
If you read this book you will learn many things.

- Negative sentences use the particle бол because the ending –вал⁴/бал⁴ cannot be added onto a negatively conjugated verb. Бол is also used in positive conditional two sentences, so listen for the negative endings!

Чи	өглөөний цай	уухгүй бол	ядарна.
You	breakfast	drink-don't	when tire.
When you don't eat breakfast, you will be tired.			

Conditional 2: Unreal or hypothetical situations. This deals with situations that explicitly didn't happen or are impossible (Think spaceships). This conditional tense requires the past tense, and has two different forms for an adjective or verb in the main clause. It also requires the use of the particle бол instead of –вал⁴/бал⁴.

- Sentences with an adjective or noun.

Хэрвээ adjective/noun + байсан бол ... үйл үг + -х байсан.
+ хгүй байсан.

Хэрвээ би баян байсан бол би 3 давхар байшин барих байсан.
If I were rich, I would build a 3 story house.

Хэрвээ би Бат Эрдэнэ байсан бол бөхийн сургууль нээхгүй байсан.
If I were Bat Erdene, I wouldn't open a wrestling school.

- Sentences with a verb.

Хэрвээ ... үйл үг + -сан⁴ + сан⁴ бол ... + х байсан.
+ хгүй байх байсан.

Хэрвээ би амралтаараа хот явсансан бол ээжтэйгээ уулзах байсан.
If I had gone to the city for vacation, I would have met my mother.

Хэрвээ чи дулаан хувцсаа өмссөнсөн бол өвдөхгүй байх байсан.
If you had worn warm clothes, you wouldn't have been sick.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Answer the question: What would you do, if... Доорх тохиолдлуудад чи яах байсан бэ?

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Цас орох | Цас орвол би дулаан хувцсаа өмсөнө.
If it snows, I'll wear warm clothes. |
| 2. Монгол хэл сурах | _____ |
| 3. Нөгөөдөр Дархан очих | _____ |
| 4. Хүчтэй салхи салхилах | _____ |
| 5. Тэр Баян-Өлгий аймаг явах | _____ |
| 6. Би өвдөх | _____ |
| 7. Жолооч хурдан явах | _____ |

Exercise 2. Translate into Mongolian. Орчуул.

1. When I get home in the winter, I light my fire.

2. If you go to trainings, you will improve.

3. If you lesson plan, you will teach well.

4. If I go to the Gobi, I will eat camel meat.

5. When you are young, you never get cold (даарах).

6. When Tsagaan Sar arrives, I will buy a new deel.

Exercise 3. Make conditional sentences using the following words. Доорх үгсийг ашиглан болзолт өгүүлбэр зохио.

Дорж, сайн дурын ажилтан, ядуу, нэртэй жүжигчин, авьяастай, гадаад хүн

Lesson 2

Dialogue

Анна: Монголд хавар хэзээ эхэлдэг вэ?

Насаа: Ер нь 3-н сараас эхэлдэг. 3, 4, 5-н сард хавар болдог.

Анна: Тэгвэл 2 сард монголын Цагаан сар болдог шүү дээ. Энэ баярыг хүмүүс хаврын баяр гэж хэлдэг. Энэ буруу юм уу?

Насаа: Энэ буруу биш яагаад гэвэл монголчууд 2 сард бид нар “өвлийг сайн давлаа, удахгүй хавар ирнэ” гэж Цагаан сарын баяр хийдэг.

Анна: Тийм үү? Тэгвэл 2 сар ямар улирал вэ?

Насаа: 2 сар бол өвлийн сүүлийн сар. Харин 3-н сар хаврын эхний сар.

Анна: Аан за, одоо ойлголоо. Хавар их гоё уу? Цаг агаар ямар байдаг вэ?

Насаа: Мэдээж аажмаар цаг агаар дулаардаг, гэхдээ хавар гоё биш. Яагаад гэвэл 3, 4-н сард хэт хуурай, их салхитай, шуургатай, хүйтэн, заримдаа цас ордог. Харин 5-н сараас жаахан дулаарч өвс, ногоо ургаж эхэлдэг.

Анна: Өө тийм үү? Би хавар болохоор цаг агаар хурдан дулаан болно гэж бодсон. Тэгвэл би 2, 3, 4-н сард гал түлэх ёстой юу?

Насаа: Тийм. Хүйтэн байдаг учраас гал түлэх ёстой. Магадгүй 5-н сард хүйтэн байвал заримдаа гал түлдэг.

Анна: Яанаа! Тэгвэл монголын хавар хэцүү юм байна!

Насаа: Тийм тийм. Та Америкийн хавартай адилхан гэж бодож болохгүй.

Анна: За, баярлалаа.

Шинэ үг

New Words

Улирал	Season
Байгаль	Nature
Эхлэх	To begin, to start
Давах	To pass
Ургах	To grow
Тэгвэл	So, so that
Хэт / аягүй	Too (adj)
Хуурай	Dry
Чийглэг	Humid air
Намар	Fall
Хавар	Spring
Зун	Summer
Өвөл	Winter



Зун



Хавар



Намар



Өвөл

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

RULES REGARDING SEASONS

Seasons keep the same spelling when they are used as subjects and indirect objects. Even though the indirect object is expressed differently in English, in Mongolian they keep the same form. The words өглөө, өдөр, орой, шөнө are the same.

What?		When?
Хавар	Хавар сайхан улирал. Spring is a nice season.	Хавар их салхитай. It is windy in the spring.
Өглөө	Ямар сайхан өглөө вэ! What a beautiful morning!	Өглөө би дандаа гүйдэг I always run in the morning.

When using seasons with дуртай, дургүй the seasons do take the dative case.

Би бүх улиралд дуртай.	Улирал + д	Season
Анна хаврын улиралд дургүй.	Хавар + т	Spring
Тэр Монголын намарт дургүй.	Намар + т	Fall
Манай багш нар зунд дуртай.	Зун + д	Summer
	Өвөл + д	Winter

Along with questions, there are sayings that use the seasons to describe life or people. Some examples are:

Хаврын тэнгэр хартай. Literally: Spring skies are black.
Meaning: Spring weather changes quickly.

Хаврын тэнгэр шиг ааштай. Lit: With a spring temperament.
Meaning: Someone is changing their mind often.

Mongolians use seasonal greetings to greet each other in formal situations and in situations when friends, family, and/or acquaintances haven't seen each other for a long time. Therefore, they are not everyday greetings, but they are very important greetings to know. Mongolians respond very well to these greetings when foreigners say them, so PCVs should learn and use them appropriately.

Зун: Сайхан зусч байна уу?	Are you summering well?
Намар: Сайхан намаржиж байна уу?	Are you autumning well?
Өвөл: Сайхан өвөлжиж байна уу?	Are you wintering well?
Хавар: Сайхан хаваржиж байна уу?	Are you springing well?

Cultural Note





PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Answer the question: When does it happen? (Хэзээ –даг⁴ вэ?) гэсэн асуултад хариул.

Ех. Цас орох

Өвөл цас ордог.

1. Үер болох _____
2. Цасаар шуурах _____
3. Шороон шуургатай байх _____
4. Навч (leaf) шар болох _____
5. Цас хайлах _____
6. Маш их халуун болох _____
7. Хүйтэрч эхлэх _____
8. Шинэ жил болох _____
9. Эрт харанхуй болох _____

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences. Өгүүлбэрийг гүйцээ.

1. Би их өлссөн байсан учраас _____
2. Монголчууд маханд их дуртай. Яагаад гэвэл _____
3. Гадаад хүмүүс маханд дургүй учраас _____
4. Тэр надад дандаа тусалдаг. Яагаад гэвэл _____
5. Би найздаа захиа бичээгүй. Яагаад гэвэл _____
6. Би өвөлд дургүй болохоор _____
7. Миний толгой өвдөж байна. Яагаад гэвэл _____

Exercise 3. Write the main clause. Гол өгүүлбэрийг бич.

1. _____ . Яагаад гэвэл гадаа их хүйтэн байсан.
2. _____ . Тийм болохоор шөнө би муу унтсан.
3. _____ . Яагаад гэвэл тэр гэрээ их санадаг.
4. _____ . Тийм учраас би түүнд хайртай.
5. _____ . Яагаад гэвэл өнөөдөр миний төрсөн өдөр.

Exercise 4. Describe the winter in your part of the United States.
Америк мужийнхаа өвлийн тухай бич.

Practice these tongue twisters!

Үүл цайлаа

Бороо орлоо

Үүр цайрлаа

Шороо шуурлаа

Шинэ үг New Words

Амралт	Vacation, holiday
Баяр	Holiday
Бэлэг	Present
Хадаг	Ceremonial scarf
Чөлөө авах	Take time off
Чөлөөтэй	Free (not busy)
Чөлөөт цаг	Free time
Баярлах	To thank, to celebrate
Тэмдэглэх	To celebrate, to note
Чимэглэх	To decorate
Шинэлэх	To become new
Золгох	To greet in a special way (only at Tsaagan Sar)

Dialogue

Чөлөөт цаг ба монголын баяр

Баяртуяа: Цагаан сараар хаана байх вэ?

Стэв: Монгол айлдаа очно.

Баяртуяа: Аан за, монгол гэр бүлийхэнтэйгээ баярлах юм уу?

Стэв: Тийм.

Баяртуяа: Хаана байсан билээ?

Стэв: Сэлэнгэ аймагт.

Баяртуяа: Тийм билүү? Бэлэг авсан уу?

Стэв: Би чихэр авсан.

Баяртуяа: Хэзээ юугаар явах вэ?

Стэв: Маргааш вагоноор явна.

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. THE INSTRUMENTAL CASE: -AAP⁴

We have seen the instrumental case used in the travel section to ask юугаар, or, by what? You also use the instrumental case to discuss vacation or holidays. It is very common to ask people what they are doing for (by) a holiday, or to discuss what you did over the vacation. Both 'for' and 'over' are replaced with -aap⁴. Check out more about the instrumental case in the supplementary grammar section!

Жишээ нь:

Цагаан сараар хаана байсан бэ?

Where were you for Tsagaan Sar?

Шинэ жилээр юу хийсэн бэ?

What did you do for New Years?

Амралтаар(аа) ажилласан уу?

Did you work over vacation?

2. FREE TIME: ЧӨЛӨӨТ ЦАГ

Чи чөлөөт цагаараа юу хийдэг вэ? What do you do in your free time? Mongolians will be interested in what you have done over the weekend, vacation, or holidays. Learn to talk about what you have done by using the following formula:

Free time / vacation / holiday + -aap⁴ + aa (my / your / his / her / their)

Жишээ нь:

- Чи чөлөөт цагаараа найзтайгаа уулздаг уу?

Do you meet up with your friend in your free time?

- Амралтаараа Баян-Өлгий явж үзсэн үү?

Over your vacation did you visit Bayn-Ulgii?

- Хагас бүтнээр юу хийх вэ?

Over the weekend what will you do?

3. ШИНЭ ЖИЛ: NEW YEAR!

There are two ways to say Happy New Year!

Шинэ жилийн мэнд хүргэе!

Шинэ оны мэнд хүргэе!

So what is the difference? Жил and он are two ways to say year. However, шинэ жил is the name of the holiday itself, while шинэ он is literally referring to the next new year from January 1st onwards. So, up until the holiday passes, it is correct to say “Шинэ жилийн мэнд хүргэе!”, while afterwards you should say “Шинэ оны мэнд хүргэе!”

If you see someone you won't be celebrating with for the new year, it is polite to wish them a happy new year by saying “Сайхан баярлаарай!”

4. ЦАГААН САР: WHITE MONTH

Mongolia has two new years. The Western new year on December 31st, and then Цагаан сар, White Month, which falls between the end of January and early March. This is a huge family holiday, with its own greetings called золгох. Be sure to greet people with your own хадаг and wear a дээл!

Greeting the eldest: Та амар сайн байна уу? Та сайхан шинэлж байна уу?

Greetings others: Амар сайн уу? Сайхан шинэлж байна уу?

Responses: Сайн / Сайхан.

Wish people a happy Цагаан сар: Сар шинэдээ сайхан шинэлээрэй!

After Цагаан сар it is customary to ask:

Q: Сайхан шинэлсэн үү?

A: Сайхан, сайхан.

Also after Цагаан сар, the first, second, and third days are usually referred to as “the new first, second, and third” in the following manner: Шинийн нэгэн, хоёрон, гурван...

Чи ямар жилтэй вэ?

Rat	Хулгана	Horse	Морь
Ox	Үхэр	Sheep	Хонь
Tiger	Бар	Monkey	Бич
Hare	Туулай	Rooster	Тахиа
Dragon	Луу	Dog	Нохой
Snake	Могой	Pig	Гахай



UNIT EIGHT EXIT PASS

Pass One. Write the answer. Хариулт бич.

What season does it happen? Тохирох улирлыг бич.

Энэ улиралд Шинэ жил, Цагаан сар болдог. _____

Цас энэ улиралд хайлдаг. _____

Чи ямар улиралд төрсөн бэ? _____

Энэ улиралд усанд сэлдэг. _____

Pass Two. Match the noun with the correct verb. Нэр үгсийг үйл үгтэй нь тохируул.

Хот	Ургах
Цас	Тэмдэглэх
Навч	Явах
Өвс	Сонсох
Гал	Суух
Бэлэг	Хайлах
Баяр	Зүүх
Маск	Авах
Мэдээ	Унах
Семинарт	Түлэх
Утас (утсаар)	Ярих

Pass Three. Describe your favorite season in detail. Дуртай улирлынхаа тухай дэлгэрэнгүй бич.

Answer the following questions in your description:

Where are you (usually) during this season?

What do you do for fun?

Are there any holidays that you celebrate?

What would you do in your favorite season if you were at home this year? (болзолт цаг)

UNIT 9: SAFETY & SECURITY

- Asking for help and rescue
- Avoiding drunk people
- Asking for safe driving
- Asking for privacy

Learning Strategies from Tucker Legerski, TEFL, M24

Find a tutor, a non-English teacher, or better yet a student you have a good relationship with. Bring your book and develop lesson plans, activities for your self and work with that student, teacher, or pay a person Out There in the community and try to work 3 to 4 times a week.

Develop flash cards, words in a bag, or Spill It! bag where you have two bags of nouns and verbs. Take out a noun and a verb and say a sentence with the two, and when the time comes, pull out multiple nouns and verbs and try more difficult tenses e.g. subjunctive mood.

Control your fear of F#@&ing up. Try words even if they sound like a garbage disposal gnarled them up. If you try, talk to folks, build the self-esteem from laughs, you will start to get better. Think of language learning like roller skating for the first time: you have to fall down 90 times, hit the pavement, wipe out, look like a toddler in public with arms out and uncoordinated, but you will eventually glide and skate after the 90 fall downs. Plus Mongolian usually are impressed with even the smallest amount of Mongolian. It helps you now, so don't worry about not using it two years, if you believe in what helps now and not worry about later.



Lesson 1

Dialogue

Шинэ үг New Words

Хулгайч (Халаасны)	Thief (Pickpocket)
Болгоомжтой	Careful
Зайл!	Go away! (rude)
Холд!	Go far/get away/leave me
Яанаа!	Oh no!
Битгий!	Don't!
Балиар (Заваан)	Disgusting/dirty
Болих	To stop doing something
Болиоч!	Stop! (demand)
Алах	To kill
Хүрэх	To touch

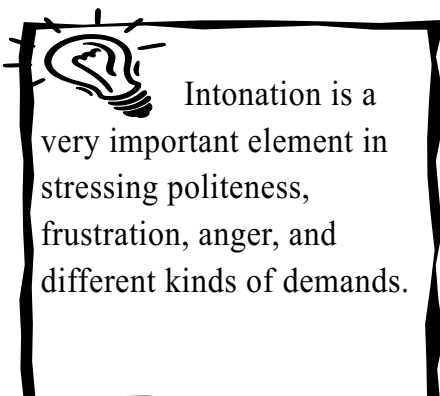
ХАРИЛЦАН ЯРИА:

- Пүүжээ: Сайн уу? Сонин юу байна?
Батмаа: Өө, юмгүй дээ, чи юу хийжийн? (хийж байна)
Пүүжээ: Би Нарантуул зах явлаа, явах уу?
Батмаа: За тэгье, явъя
Ээж: Болгоомжтой яваарай, тэнд хулгайч нар байгаа шүү!

*** Нарантуул Зах дээр***

- Согтуу хүн: Май, энийг ав, мөнгө өгөөч!
Батмаа: Үгүй, авахгүй....(being grabbed)
Зүгээр бай, болиоч!
Согтуу хүн: Ална шүү!
Батмаа: Чи ямар балиар юм бэ. Холд!
Пүүжээ: Хөөе! Чиний цүнх яасан бэ?
Батмаа: Өө яанаа! Туслаарай!
Хулгайч юм авчихлаа!
Пүүжээ: Би чамд цагдаа дуудаад өгье.

This conversation is a strong argument taking place between three Mongolians; foreigners using this type of language may escalate situations. Be aware.



GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. GIVING COMMANDS WITH THE SUFFIX, -ААРАЙ⁴

The suffix –аарай⁴ can be the polite form of a verb for giving a command. However, it can also sound rude if used incorrectly. Some texts roughly translate –аарай⁴ as “please,” but please remember that the word “please” doesn’t really exist in the Mongolian language.

A person making a request with –аарай⁴ usually anticipates that the request will be met. In other words, using this form in certain situations is not very appropriate. For example, if one wanted to say, “please lend me some money,” this –аарай⁴ ending will not be used because there is a high probability that the person will say “no.” The -аач⁴ ending should be used instead.

Энд зогсоорой. Stop here.
Энд зогсчих. Stop here! (More of an immediate demand)

Цагдаа байна, энд буучих!
There are police, get out here!

Манай найзууд энд явж байна, буучихъя.
Here are my friends, let me get out immediately.

Goodbye wishes are often expressed with this suffix.

Сайхан нойрсоорой! Please sleep well!
Дараа ирээрэй. Please come again!
Ирж байгаарай.

-аарай⁴ complying with vowel harmony: аваарай, тоглоорой
-иарай/-иорой for verb stems ending with –и or –ь: харь+аарай = хариарай
-гаарай⁴ for verb stems ending with a diphthong or a long vowel: хий+(г)ээрэй

For negation, the negative particle битгий is commonly used.

Үүнд хүрээрэй. Please, touch it.
Үүнд битгий хүрээрэй. Please, don’t touch it.

2. ШҮҮ AND ITS VARIOUS USES

Adding the verb stem -ж\ч болохгүй шүү or the future negative tense plus шүү increases emphasis to the verb and underlines the desired act. It can also be used in positive forms to accentuate action. One may say, “би явлаа шүү” to friends to express that they are leaving immediately. Or a mother might say to their child, “сайн цэвэрлэнэ шүү!” to convey the importance to clean well. “Шүү” is typically used at the end of insults and threats. Here are some other examples of how it can be used.

Хүрч болохгүй шүү!
Хүрэхгүй шүү!
Би цагдаа дуудлаа шүү!

3. GIVING URGENT REQUESTS WITH THE SUFFIX, -ААЧ⁴

-аач⁴ expresses a concrete demand or an urgent request. Typically it’s used with чи. It often appears together with the modifying verb өг-. This ending can occasionally be roughly translated as “please.”

Та надад үүнийг хийгээд өгөөч. Please, do it for me.

For negation, the negative particles битгий and бүү are commonly used, usually битгий in speaking and бүү in writing.

Надад бүү саад хийгээч. Please don’t disturb me.
Тэр алимыг битгий идээч. Please don’t eat that apple.

4. DIRECT COMMANDS

When there is a *ZERO-SUFFIX (*яв / go), the verb stem itself expresses the imperative form (direct command) which is addressed to the second person singular or plural. It can be doubled for emphasis.

Энд тамхи бүү тат! Don’t smoke here!
Надад битгий саад хий! Don’t disturb me!
Та нар ор ор. All of you come in, come in.
Миний дүү яв яв. Go, go my brother.

5. EXPRESSING “ANY” OR “NO” WITH THE Ч PARTICLE

The particle ч after the words who, what, where, and when means “any” or “no,” depending on the context. If the intended meaning is negative, the verb must be negative as well.

Хэзээ ч болно. Anytime is fine.
Хэн ч надад хэлээгүй. No one told me.
Тэр ямар ч мах иддэггүй. She doesn’t eat any kind of meat.
Бид юугаар ч хамаагүй явж болно. Whatever way we’re going is fine.
 (Mode of transportation)



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Change the verbs into commands or requests. Үйл үгсийг захиран хүсэх хэлбэрт хувирган бич.

	Zero suffix	-аарай ⁴	-аач ⁴
Зогсох			
Явах			
Хүрэх			
Туслах			
Суух			
Гүйх			
Барих			
Авах			
Холдох			

Exercise 2. Answer the question, what would you do if....
Дараах тохиолдолд чи яах вэ?

Ex. If a driver drives fast I will get out.

Жолооч хурдан явбал би бууя.

- Someone disturbs you _____
- A person eats your food _____
- Children touch your things _____
- You leave your friends _____
- You see kids smoking by the school dorm _____

Exercise 3. Make commands and demands using the words below.
Keep the word order. Үгсийн дарааллыг хадгалан захиран хүсэх өгүүлбэр болго.

- Жолооч, энд, битгий, зогс-_____
- Эндээс, болгоомжтой, яв-_____
- Энэ, юманд, битгий, хүр-_____
- Надаас, хурдан, холд _____
- хаалга, битгий, онгойлго-_____

Exercise 4. Translate the following phrases as you would say them to someone. Орчуул.

- No one helped me. _____
- I didn't see anything. _____
- She never eats fat. (use хэзээ ч) _____
- I will go anywhere. _____
- No one is watching television. _____
- No one never said nothing nowhere. _____

Dialogue

Багш нарын баяр сургууль дээр.

Багш: Хөөе, хаашаа явж байгаа юм бэ?
[хаашаа явжайгаан]

Сайн дурын ажилтан: Би гэрлүүгээ
явлаа.

Багш: Чи суу л даа. 11 цаг болж байна.
Ганцаараа явж болохгүй шүү.
Жаахан хүлээгээрэй. Гэхдээ
дахиад пиво, миво битгий
уугаарай. Манай захирал чамайг
хүргээд өгнө.

Захирал: Тийм ээ, тийм. Чи ганцаараа
явбал согтуу хүмүүс чамайг зодно
шүү!

СДА: Зүгээр, зүгээр. Согтуу хүмүүс байхгүй.

Багш: Байгаа шүү дээ. Суу! Чи архи уугаад согтсон байна. Гадуур согтуу хүмүүс,
нохой байгаа.

СДА: Гэвч би нохойноос айдаггүй!

Захирал: Монгол нохойноос айж байгаарай. Монгол нохой чамайг хазна.

СДА: За, за. Хамт явнаа. Захирал аа, хэзээ явах вэ?

Захирал: Одоохон. Чихэр ид.

Шинэ үг

New Words

Зодох	To fight
Цохих	To hit
Хазах	To bite
Айх	To be scared
Дахиад	Again
Согтуу	Drunk (adj./noun)
Согтох	To be drunk
Гэхдээ/Гэвч	But
Хүлээх	To wait
Хүргээд өгөх	To take/bring someone somewhere
Хөрш	Neighbor

GRAMMAR AND EXPLANATION

1. BIG BUT(T)s - Гэхдээ, Гэвч, Харин

Big 'buts' and I cannot lie. Гэхдээ, гэвч, харин. Unlike харин, гэхдээ and гэвч can be used as conjunctions when talking about similar/limited things and харин when the speaker is bringing up something contradictory or different from the original subject.

Although many Mongolians will understand if you were to use харин, it is grammatically incorrect and peculiar in speech.

Зак 12 сард Япон явна. Харин Ник Филиппин явна.

Zak will go to Japan in December. But Nick will go to the Philippines.

Кал Оюунаатай Хятадаас сая буцаж ирсэн гэвч цагаан хэрэм (Great Wall) үзээгүй.

Cal just came back from China with Oyunaa but didn't see the Great Wall.

Зак Ганаад хайр сэтгэлийн дуу дуулсан. Гэхдээ тэр дуу Кэйти, Крис хоёрт таалагдаагүй.

Zak sang a love song to Ganaa. But Katie and Chris did not enjoy that song.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Act out these scenarios with a partner(s). Дүрээр үзүүл.

1. You want to enter a хашаа but are afraid of the owner's dangerous dog.
Чи хашаатай айлд ормоор байвч тэдний дайрдаг нохойноос айж байна.
2. The local drunk constantly pressures you to drink out in public with him.
Нутгийн согтуу хүн гудамжинд таараад чамд архи уулгах гэж байнга шахаж байна.
3. After a get together with some friends you must express your doubts about walking home alone.
Найзуудтайгаа цугласны дараа оройхон гэртээ харих хэрэгтэй болжээ. Гэвч ганцаараа явахаас эргэлзэж байгаагаа илэрхийлмээр байна.
4. Walking along the road, you and your friend notice an unfriendly looking group staring at you.
Чи найзтайгаа гудамжаар явж байгаад та нар луу тааламжгүй харж байгаа хэсэг залуусыг анзаарна.
5. You get into a taxi, but notice the driver and his friend are passing beer back and forth, while driving recklessly.
Чи таксинд суусан хойноо жолооч хамаагүй давхиж найзтайгаа пиво дамжуулж байгааг анзаарна.

Example: СДА: Хүн байна уу?
 Хөрш: Байна! Хэн бэ?
 СДА: Жон байна аа! Нохойтой юу? Би орох гэсэн юм! [орох гэсийн]
 Хөрш: Нохой уяатай, ороорой.

Exercise 2. What would you say if...? ...юу гэж хэлэх вэ?

1. Someone is touching you inappropriately. _____

2. It is extremely late, you need to go home. _____

3. A strange person is following you. _____

4. A dangerous dog is barking at you. _____

5. A drunk man knocks on your door. _____

6. Your driver looks like they are drunk. _____

7. You've had enough but are offered more drinks. _____

UNIT NINE EXIT PASS

ACT OUT AND PRACTICE THESE EXTRA PHRASES.

This man wants to hurt me!

Энэ хүн намайг зодох гээд байна.

That man is following me.

Тэр хүн намайг дагаад байна.

What are you doing?!

Яаж байгаа юм бэ? /Яажаагаан?

Get away from me!

Яах гээд байгаа юм бэ? /Яахгээдаагаан?

Get the hell out of here!

(Надаас) холдоорой!/холдооч!/холд!

Яв! /Цаашаа бай!/
Зүгээр байгаарай./Зүгээр бай.

Cut it out/be cool.

Нохой хорио!

Hold the dog!

Нохой уяатай юу?

Is the dog tied up?

Танай нохой зуудаг уу?

Is your dog dangerous?

Харанхуй болохоос өмнө би гэрлүүгээ явах хэрэгтэй

I need to go home before it gets dark.

Би гэрлүүгээ ганцаараа явж болохгүй.
Одоо их оройтсон байна, би энд унтаж/хонож болох уу?

I shouldn't walk home alone.

Уучлаарай, би уудаггүй.

It is late now; can I sleep/spend the night?

Миний толгой өвдөөд байна, би ууж чадахгүй.

I'm sorry, I don't drink.

Уучлаарай, маргааш би ажилтай.

I have a headache, I can't drink.

Би зүгээр л амсыя.

Sorry, I have work tomorrow.

Би уучихвал дараа нь толгой их өвддөг юм.

I'll just have a taste,

Дайлсанд баярлалаа. Гэвч би үнэхээр ууж чадахгүй.

If I drink, I get really sick.

Энэ автобус дэндүү олон хүнтэй юм.

Thanks for offering, but I can't drink at all.

Уучлаарай, би энэ жолоочтой явж чадахгүй.

This bus has too many people.

Энэ жолооч согтуу юм шиг байна.

I'm sorry; I can't go with this driver.

Бид энэ машинаар явахгүй.

This driver looks drunk.

За, бид энэ машинаар явъя.

We won't go in this car.

Би дараагийн автобусыг хүлээнэ, болох уу?

Okay, let's ride in this car.

I will wait for the next bus.

SENSITIVE INFORMATION PAGE

These phrases are for you to become conscious of what some offensive language may sound like. These are not for saying. Don't act like immature jerks and make Americans look bad in front of Mongolians. Be aware that using this type of language, inappropriately, or at all, could potentially put you in dangerous situations.

Зарим нэг залуучууд доорх үг, хэллэгүүдийг хэлж байхыг чи сонсох тохиолдол гарч магадгүй. Үүнийг чи хэрэглэвэл монголчуудын өмнө бүдүүлэг харагдаж, эвгүй байдалд орохоос гадна бусдад өөрийгөө буруу ойлгуулж болох юм. Цаашлаад өөрийн чинь аюулгүй байдалд нөлөөлөх талтай.

Sex: Body Parts

Breasts: мээм, мөөм, хөх

Vagina: эмэгтэй бэлэг эрхтэн, умдаг

Sexual Organs: нууц эрхтэн

Butt, Ass: амбаар, бөгс

Penis: эрэгтэй бэлэг эрхтэн, боов

Sex: Propositioning & Other

To orgasm: дур тавих

Erection: сэрэл хөдлөх, боов босох

To make out: үнсэлдэх, үнгэлдэх

To ejaculate: “дур тавих”

To kiss: үнсэх

To have sex: шаалцах & шаах (very rude/vulgar), сексдэх, загас наадуулах, “унтах” (colloquially)

Let's have sex: Хоёулаа унтъя.

Are you a virgin/have you had sex? : Чи унтаж үзсэн үү?

Sex: секс, бэлгийн харьцаа, (pussy)

Insults- бүдүүлэг үгс

Fuck/Cunt: пизда (common slur while playing basketball (or other games) and making a mistake or out of frustration, can be directed at both people and situations.)

Shut the fuck up: Битгий хуц!

Thief: хулгайч (Usually said by men or rude women.)

Get the fuck away: Зайл! (Very rude, last resort, don't ever say this)

To fuck, to hit/beat, and to lie: шаах

Chink: хужаа (said about Chinese people, things)

Don't fuck with me: Битгий шаагаад бай! (Lies/physical violence)

Stupid: тэнэг, мангар, i.e. Шал тэнэг юм аа! (Stupid as a floor)

Ugly: матар (directly translates as crocodile)

Bitch: гичий

Shit: новш

Slut: янхан

Gay, Homo: гомо, цэнхэр хүн, ижил хүйстэн, банди

UNIT 10:HOUSING

- Making requests and complaints
- Describing one's house

Learning Strategies from Laura Contreras, Health, M24

I start conversations with taxi drivers, delguur cashiers and everywhere I can to keep practicing normal every day conversations. I also nicely ask them if I am saying the words right (as needed) and they correct me-they are actually happy to help me and to know I am trying to learn their language.

I have my co-workers and Mongolian friends write useful work phrases and then I have them say it slowly for me. I then practice them and then come back the next day and try to use the phrases they taught me the day before.

I try to pay attention to conversations between Mongolians even though I do not understand the whole thing, I try to pick up some words and then put them in context to figure out the conversation. Then I repeat what I understood and have them correct me.

I exchange 3 daily new phrases with one of my co-workers; I teach them 3 phrases in English and they teach me the same ones in Mongolian.

When messaging, I try to write what I know in Mongolian and if I am wrong, my Mongolian friends correct me.

Mongolians looove that I speak Mongolian even just a little.



Lesson 1

Шинэ үг

New Words

Өрөө	Room
Том өрөө	Living room
Жижиг өрөө	Bedroom
Гал тогоо	Kitchen
Дулаалах	To warm up/to winterize
Хэцүү	Difficult
Гал түлэх	To make a fire
Усанд явах	To get water
Түлээ хагалах	To chop wood

Dialogue

Дорж: Чи гэрт амьдардаг уу, байшинд амьдардаг уу?

Эван: Би байшинд амьдардаг.

Дорж: Танайх хэдэн өрөөтэй вэ?

Эван: 2 өрөөтэй. Гал тогооны өрөө, бас том өрөө.

Дорж: Өвөл дулаахан уу?

Эван: Цонхоо сайн дулаалбал дулаахан. Гэрт амьдрах ямар вэ?

Дорж: Жаахан хэцүү. Түлээ хагалах, гал түлэх, ус авах, гэрээ дулаалах гээд их ажилтай.

GER VOCABULARY

Унь Poles of a ger which make up the roof

Өрх Smoke hole cover of a ger

Рам Window spaces

Тооно Frame in the centre of a ger

(гэрийн) Хаяа

(гэрийн) Хана

Гэрийн бүрээс

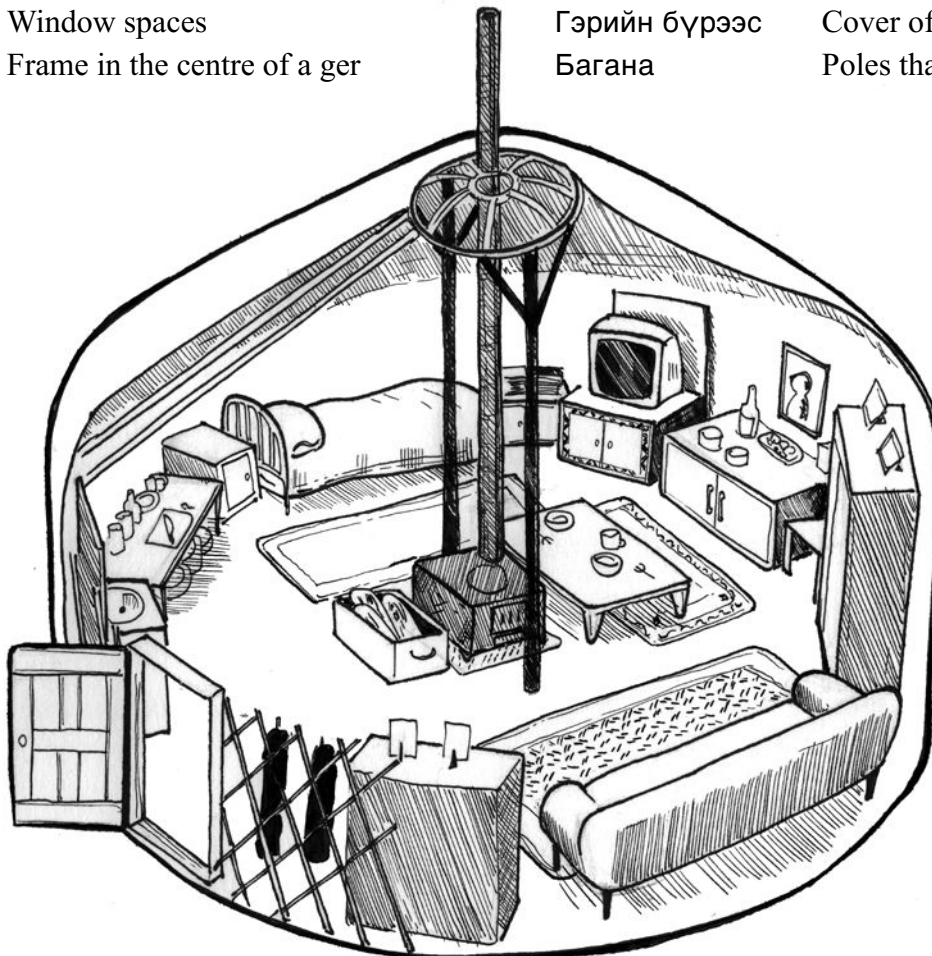
Багана

The lower edge of a ger wall

The section of a wall in a ger

Cover of a ger

Poles that hold a ger bottom



(цахилгаан) Хөрөө (chain) Saw

Гэр дулаалах

To winterize a ger

Бие засах/“морь харах”

To use an outhouse/

“see a man about a horse”

Жорлон

Хашаа

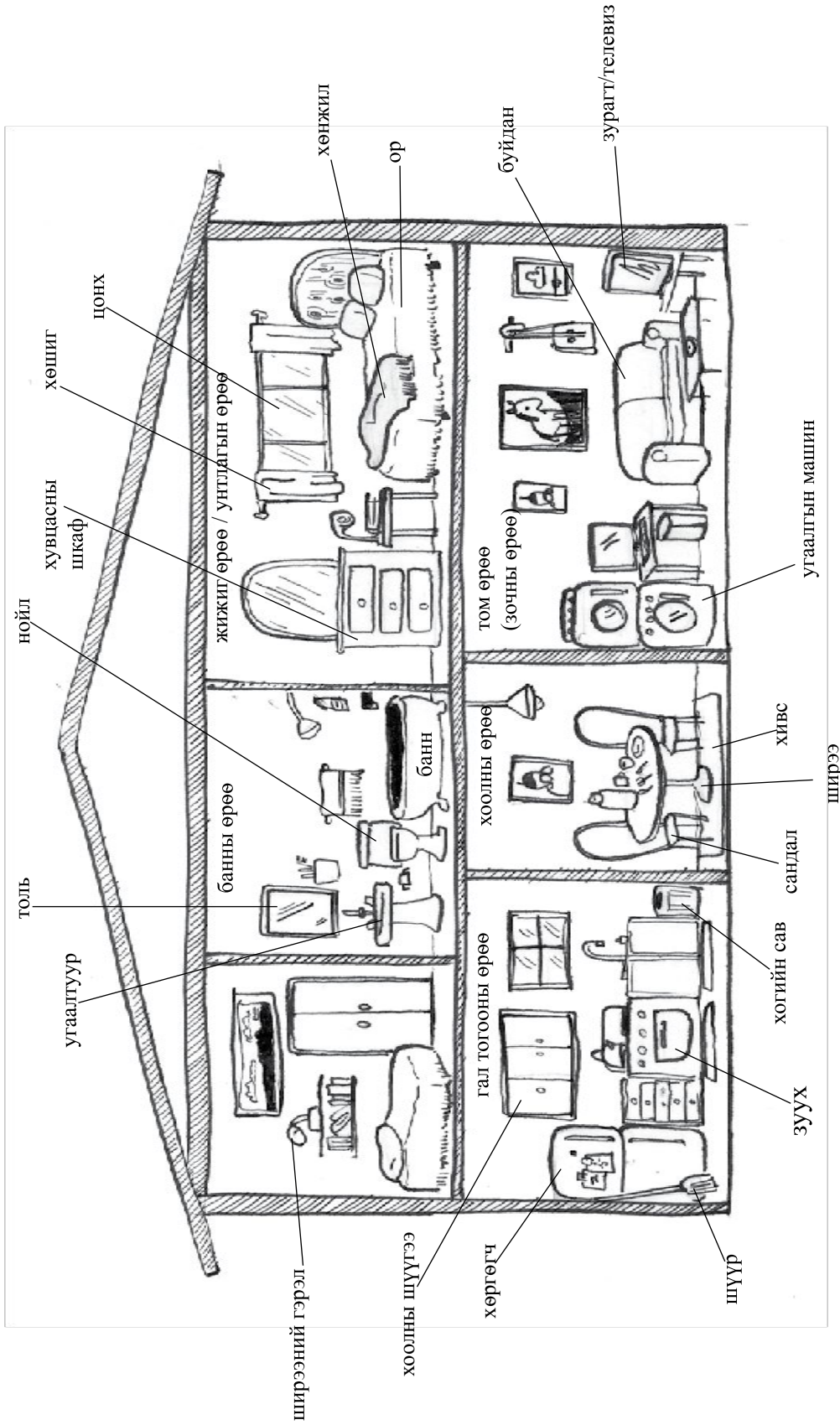
Худаг

Outhouse

Yard/ fence

Water well

HOUSE VOCABULARY



хаалга	Door	яндан	Chimney/smoke pipe	хөнжлийн даавуу	Blanket sheet
усны тэрэг	Cart for fetching water	усны сав	Water container	гоожуур	Water dispenser for a dry sink
шүүлтүүр	Water filter	бурхан	Shrine	ТОГ	Electricity
цахилгаан	Electric	гэрэл	Light		

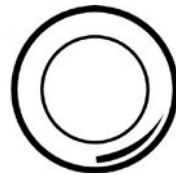
OTHER USEFUL VOCABULARY



аяга



аяга



таваг



халбага



сэрээ



хутга



шанага



элдүүр



махны мод



заазуур



данх



хайруулын таваг



халуун сав



хувин



плитка



тогоо



будaa чанагч



ус буцалгагч



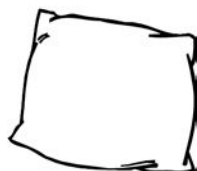
уртасгагч



розетка



тоос сорогч



дэр



мешок



түмпэн



чийдэн



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Circle the odd word in the line. Хамааралгүй үгийг дугуйл.

- а) том өрөө, жижиг өрөө, гал тогоо, хоолны шүүгээ, банны өрөө
- б) аяга, дэр, таваг, халбага, хутга, сэрээ, данх, хувин
- в) диван, ор, ширээ, шкаф, зурагт, хөргөгч, хувцас, номын тавиур
- г) хагалах, хөрөөдөх, түлэх, ус зөөх, унших
- д) цонх, унь, тооно, өрх, багана, бүрээс

Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words related to furniture. Express your needs for living in Mongolia. Тавилгатай холбоотой үгсийг нөхөж бич.

- Ех. Би унтаж хэвтэх _____ ор _____ авмаар байна. (I'd like to have a bed for sleeping)
- 1. Би цай ууж, хоол идэх _____ авмаар байна.
 - 2. Би сууж амрах _____ авмаар байна.
 - 3. Би хувцсаа угаах _____ авмаар байна.
 - 4. Би шалан дээр тавих _____ авмаар байна.
 - 5. Надад ханан дээр өлгөх _____ хэрэгтэй.
 - 6. Надад хувцсаа өлгөх _____ хэрэгтэй.
 - 7. Надад хог хаях _____ хэрэгтэй.
 - 8. Надад нүүрээ харах _____ хэрэгтэй.
 - 9. Надад мах хэрчих _____ хэрэгтэй.

Exercise 3. Match nouns to the verbs. Нэр үгсийг үйл үгтэй холбо.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. цонх | а. арилгах (peal) |
| 2. ус | б. хугарах (be broken) |
| 3. цоож | в. хэрчих (cut) |
| 4. сандлын хөл | г. хагалах (chop) |
| 5. тог | д. гоожих (leak) |
| 6. түлээ | е. зуурах (knead dough) |
| 7. гал | ё. хагарах (be shatter) |
| 8. мах | ж. түлэх (make, burn) |
| 9. гурил | з. эвдрэх (be broken) |
| 10. ногоо | и. тасрах (be off) |

Exercise 4. Fill in the blank with the appropriate prepositions. Байршил заасан үгсийг нөхөж бич.

- Ех. Манай зочны өрөөнд нэг диван байдаг.
- 1. Диваны _____ нэг жижиг ширээ бий.
 - 2. Ширээн _____ цаг, ном, сэтгүүл, байдаг.
 - 3. Тэр ширээний _____ зурагт байдаг.
 - 4. Гал тогоонд хоолны шүүгээ байдаг.
 - 5. Тэр шүүгээн _____ аяга тавагнууд байдаг.
 - 6. Шүүгээний _____ хоёр сандал бий.
 - 7. Тэр хоёр сандлын _____ нэг том ширээ байгаа.
 - 8. Цонхны _____ хөргөгч байдаг.
 - 9. Хөргөгчин _____ хүйтэн ундаа бий.

Exercise 5. Review the prepositions. Describe the accommodations of your host family. Монгол гэр дотор хаана юу байдгыг байршил заасан үгсийг ашиглан бич.

Exercise 6. Work in pairs. Draw furniture in your room without showing it to your partner. Then tell him/her (in Mongolian) to draw what you say and compare. Нэг оюутан нь унтлагын өрөөнийхөө тавилгуудыг нөгөө оюутандаа хэлж, сонсож байгаа оюутан харахгүйгээр зураад, хэлсэнтэй харьцуулж шалга.



YOUR ROOM



YOUR PARTNER'S ROOM

Lesson 2

Шинэ үг

New Words

Мужаан	Carpenter
Цахилгаанчин	Electrician
Слесарь	Plumber
Өөр/өшөө	What else
Асуудал	Problem
Одоохондоо	For now
Бусад нь	The others/the rest/other
Засуулах	To get fixed

Dialogue

- Хэнри: Надад мужаан хэрэгтэй байна.
Захирал: Яасан бэ?
Хэнри: Манай хаалганы цоож эвдэрчихлээ.
Захирал: За мэдлээ. Өөр ямар асуудал байна?
Хэнри: Манай тог дандаа тасардаг.
Захирал: Би цахилгаанчин дуудъя.
Хэнри: Бас угаалтуураа засуулмаар байна.
Захирал: За мэдлээ. Би слесарьт хэлье. Өөр?
Хэнри: Одоохондоо бусад нь зүгээр. Баярлалаа.

REVIEW EXERCISE.

Insert the correct verb with conditional (if)

conjugation (-вал, -вол, -вэл, -вөл). Нөхцлүүдийгг ашиглан өгүүлбэрүүдийг гүйцээ.

Цонххагарвал..... шиллүүлнэ.

1. Түлээ захиралд хэлнэ.
2. Ус слесарьт хэлнэ.
3. Цоож засуулна.
4. Тог цахилгаанчинд хэлнэ.
5. Сандлын хөл засуулна.

ADD'L HELPFUL PHRASES:

Манай плитка ажиллахгүй байна.
My stove doesn't work.

No .....	..... байхгүй.
No heat	Халаалт байхгүй
No water	Ус байхгүй
No wood	Мод байхгүй
No electricity	Тог байхгүй

Use the instrumental case (-аар⁴) to express who will be doing the action.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Би мужаанаар ширээгээ засуулмаар байна. | I want to have the carpenter fix my table. |
| Би шуудангаар захиа явуулах хэрэгтэй. | I need to send a letter by mail. |
| Би модчиноор түлээгээ хөрөөдүүлэх хэрэгтэй. | I need to have my wood sawn by a lumberjack. |

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

1. USING MULTIPLE SUFFIXES IN ONE WORD

Sometimes a word has two or more suffixes in Mongolian. There can be two suffixes in one word.

1. The suffix –чих- expresses an action which is fully completed.
2. The suffix –лаа⁴ expresses an action that happened in the recent past (or is about to happen in the immediate future).

Эвдэр+чих+лээ = эвдэрчихлээ.

Combining these suffixes has the meaning of an action that happened recently and is finished.

Би даалгавраа хийчихлээ. I've just finished doing my homework.

Бид хоолоо идчихлээ. We have just eaten our meal.

The usage of this suffix is very popular and it is pronounced very quickly.

2. THE CAUSATIVE CASE

In most cases, the causative case means 'to cause some action' that is formed by the addition of the suffix –уул/-үүл or –лга according to vowel harmony. These suffixes are not exhaustive; there are many causative case endings in Mongolian that are appropriate to different situations, and imply a different meaning.

Засах	To fix	Засуулах	To be fixed
Хийх	To do	Хийлгэх	To be done
Хадах	To hammer	Хадуулах	To be hammered
Оёх	To sew	Оёулах	To be sewn
Унших	To read	Уншуулах	To be read
Орчуулах	To translate	Орчуулуулах	To be translated
Явах	To go	Явуулах	To be gone (to send, as in mail)

Би хаалгаа засуулмаар байна. I want my door to be fixed.

Би угаалтуураа засуулах хэрэгтэй байна. I need to get my sink fixed.

Please note that these suffixes are not exhaustive; there are many causative case ending in Mongolian that are appropriate to different situations, and imply a different meaning. For example, you've seen the verb барих, to carry or hold. At Наадам, you probably heard the phrase “бөх барилдаж байна,” “the wrestlers are wrestling.” This word, “барилдах,” derives from the word “барих.” The suffix/ infix “-лд-” implies an action that is happening between two parties, usually in conflict. Roughly translated, we might say “wrestlers are carrying each other.” As another example, “ярих,” as you know, is translated as “to talk.” However, “ярилц-ах” is translated as “to converse.” The Mongolian language has several suffixes/infixes like this, that change the nature of the causative action being performed. Having said that, the suffixes presented in this lesson are some of the more common causative cases. If you find this as interesting as I do, you might consider looking at the book Mongolian Grammar by Rita Kullman and D. Tserenpil, which will be made available to you after pre-service training.



PRACTICE

Exercise 1. Review the form that expresses a completed action in the recent past. Make complaints in the following situations. Доорх өгүүлбэрүүдийг сая өнгөрсөн цагт илэрхийл.

- Ex. Your lock is broken. (эвдрэх) _____ Манай цоож эвдэрчихсэн. _____
1. The chair leg was broken.(хугарах)
 2. The pipe in the bath room has burst. (цоорох)
 3. Your window is broken.(хагарах)
 4. The curtain for your window is torn.(урагдах)
 5. The radiator is broken. (хагарах)

Exercise 2. Put the words in the correct order and make sentences. Үгнүүдийг зөв дараалалд оруулж өгүүлбэр бүтээ.

1. Би, засуулмаар, угаалтуураа, байна.
2. Манай, хагарсан, зочны, цонх, өрөөний
3. ажиллахгүй, плитка, байна, Манай
4. мужаан, Та, чадах, дуудаж, надад, уу
5. шиллүүлээрэй, Чи, өрөөнийхөө, том, цонхыг

Exercise 3. Use these words to write what you intend to or would like to do. Эдгээр үгсийг ашиглан юу хийх гэж байгаагаа бич.

- Ex. Хаалга засуулах. : Би хаалгаа засуулъя. Би хаалгаа засуулмаар байна
1. Цонхоо шиллүүл- _____
 2. Шинэ цоож хийлгэ- _____

Exercise 4. Find the errors in the following sentences and correct them. Алдааг олж өгүүлбэрүүдийг зөв болго.

1. Би мужаан хэрэгтэй. _____
2. Би хаалгаа засуулмаар хэрэгтэй. _____
3. Манай хаалга өчигдөр эвдэрдэг. _____
4. Хараач, мужаан иржээ. _____
5. Яг одоо тэр манай хаалгыг зассан. _____

Exercise 5. Read the story and answer the following questions. Эхийг уншаад, доорх асуултуудад хариул.

Манай байшин:

Манайх хоёр давхар байшинтай. Манай байшин том. Нэг давхарт зочны өрөө, гал тогоо, хоолны өрөө бас банны өрөө байдаг. Дээд давхарт хоёр унтлагын өрөө, нэг ажлын өрөө, нэг банны өрөө байдаг. Бас байшингийнхаа доор зоорьтой. Манайх их том хашаатай. Хашаан дотроо нэг гарааш, ногооны талбайтай. Байшингийн ард гоё цэцэрлэг бий. Тэнд бид амрах дуртай.

Асуултууд:

1. Танайх гэрт амьдардаг уу? _____
2. Танайх хэдэн өрөөтэй вэ? _____
3. Танай унтлагын өрөө хаана байдаг вэ? _____
4. Танайх зоорьтой юу? Хаана байдаг вэ? _____
5. Танайх том хашаатай юу? _____
6. Танай гарааш хаана байдаг вэ? _____
7. Танайх мод, цэцэг тарьдаг уу? _____

Exercise 6. Read the story and write ЗӨВ (true) or БУРУУ (false) next to the statements. Эхийг уншаад, зөв эсвэл бурууг бич.

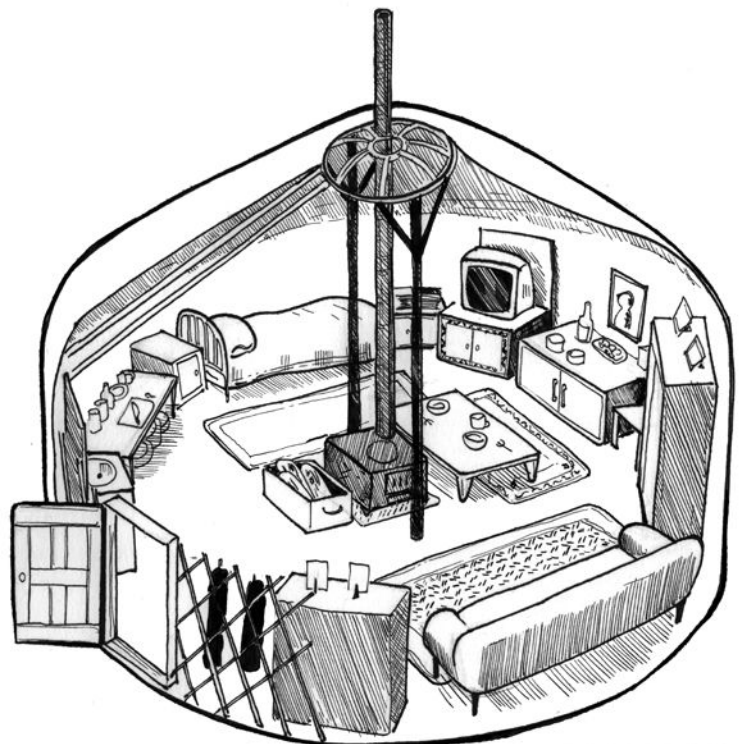
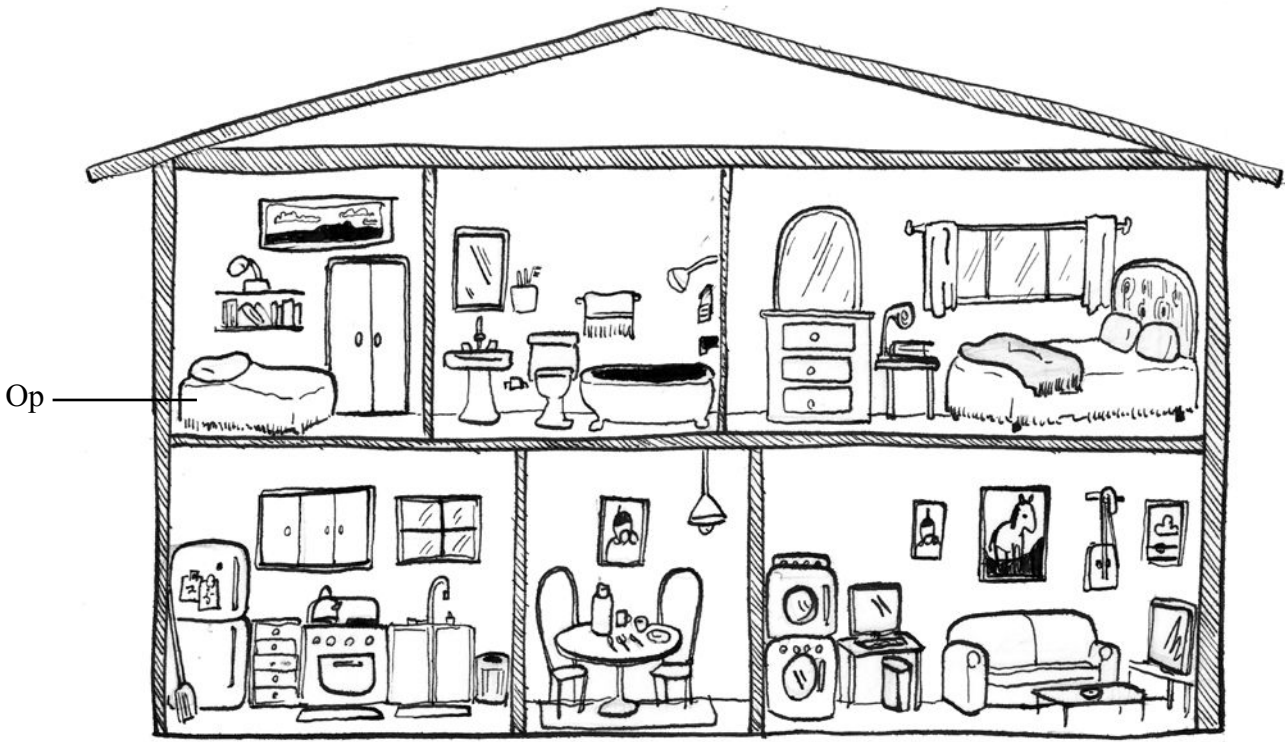
Жейсон Монголд:

Жейсон Баян-Өлгий аймгийн Улаан Хус суманд амьдардаг. Тэр таван ханатай том цагаан гэрт амьдардаг. Жейсон эхлээд гэрт амьдрахаас айж байлаа. Яагаад гэвэл тэр түлээ хагалж үзээгүй, гал түлж чаддаггүй байсан. Гэвч Жейсон маш хурдан хугацаанд гал түлж, мод хагалж сурчээ. Өнгөрсөн өвөл түүний гэр маш дулаахан байсан.

1. Жейсон гэрт амьдардаг.
2. Жейсоны гэр маш жижиг.
3. Түүний гэр хуучин, хүйтэн.
4. Тэр түлээ хагалж чаддаггүй байсан.
5. Жейсон монгол гэрт амьдарч сурчээ.

UNIT TEN EXIT PASS

Pass One. Label as many objects in the following pictures. Аль болох олныг. Нэрлэ.



Supplementary Clarification Language

You will have lots of questions in class, but a lot of your questions will be clarifying questions, such as, “what did you say?” or “what word was that?”. Here are some clarifying questions to help you keep on top of what your host family and LCF are saying, and in the future what your community members are trying to tell you.

Юу гэнээ? Юу гэсэн бэ?	What did you say? (Implies: I didn't hear you)
Дахиад хэл дээ.	Say it again, please.
Удаан хэл дээ / Удаан унш даа.	Say it slowly, please. / Read it slowly, please.
Яаж хэлэх вэ? / Яаж бичих вэ?	How do you say / write that?
Жишээ нь / жишээлбэл...	For example / could you give an example?

Naming

Энийг / тэрийг / наадахыг чинь юу гэх вэ?	What is this / that / that called?
Энийг / тэрийг / наадахыг чинь.....гэдэг юм уу?	Is this / that / that called.....?
Жишээ нь: Энийг ширээ гэдэг юм уу?	Is this called ширээ?

Comparisons

Адилхан уу?	Are they the same?
Ойролцоо юу?	Are they similar?
O ¹ O ² -тай адилхан уу / ойролцоо юу?	Is ...the same as / similar to ...?
Нарийхан туранхайтай ойролцоо юу?	Is нарийхан similar to туранхай?
Өөр үү? Ялгаатай юу?	Are they different?
... ..-аас өөр үү?	Is ... different from?
Шил саваас өөр үү?	Is шил different from сав?
... .. хоёр ямар ялгаатай вэ?	What is the difference between ... and ...?
... .. хоёрын ялгаа нь юу вэ?	What is the difference between ... and ...?
Аяга таваг хоёр ямар ялгаатай вэ?	What is the difference between аяга and тавга?
Аяга таваг хоёрын ялгаа нь юу вэ?	What is the opposite of ...?
... гэдгийн эсрэг үг нь юу вэ?	What is its opposite?
Эсрэг үг нь юу вэ?	Is it ... or?
... юм уу, ... юм уу?	
Цэнхэр юм уу, хөх юм уу?	Is it цэнхэр or хөх?
Аль нь юм?	Which one is it?

Meaning

(Энэ) юу гэсэн үг юм? [үгийн]	What does this / that mean?
... (гэж) юу гэсэн үг юм?	What does ... mean?

Жишээ нь:

Юу байна гэж юу гэсэн үг юм?	What does Юу байна mean?
... гэж ... гэсэн үг үү?	Does ... mean ...?
... гэж үү?	Is...what you said/mean?

Supplementary Classroom Language

You should already be familiar with many classroom commands, such as сонсоорой, яриарай, суугаарай, босоорой, etc, but what about other useful classroom commands, questions, or language? We've compiled some helpful phrases that you can use as teachers. And remember, битгий is a really useful word!

Үйл үг	Утга	Жишээ нь	
Хаах	To close	Хаалга хаа	Хаалга битгий хаа
Аних	To close	Нүдээ ань	Нүдээ битгий ань
Нээх	To open	Дэвтрээ нээ	Дэвтрээ битгий нээ
Харах	To look	Самбар луу хар	Самбар луу битгий хар
Барих (барь)	To hold	Үзгээ барь	Үзгээ битгий барь
Арчих	To erase	Самбараа арчаарай	Самбараа битгий арчаарай
Онгойлгох	To open	Цонхоо онгойлго	Цонхоо битгий онгойлго
Тэмдэглэх	To take notes	Өгүүлбэрийг тэмдэглэ	Өгүүлбэрийг битгий тэмдэглэ
Чээжлэх	To memorize	Үгийг чээжлээрэй	Үгийг битгий чээжлээрэй
Тавь	To put/place	Сандлаа дээш нь тавь	Сандлаа дээш нь битгий тавь

Practice. Write the verbs you already know and add examples.

Common Commands

Зүгээр байгаарай	Be calm.
Дуугүй байгаарай / Чимээгүй	Please shut up / Be quiet.
Зааврыг сонсоорой / уншаарай	Listen / read the directions.
Анхааралтай сонсоорой	Listen carefully!

Is there anyone...? ... Хүн байна уу?

Асуух хүн байна уу?	Is there anyone with questions?
Хариулах хүн байна уу?	Is there anyone who can answer?
Хэн хариулах вэ?	Who will answer?
Ойлгоогүй хүн байна уу?	Is there anyone who doesn't understand?
Ойлгомжтой юу?	Is it clear?

Classroom uproar? Use these phrases to get the students' attention.

Яаж байна?	[яа-жийн]	What's happening?
Яагаад байна?	[яагаа-дайн]	What's happening?
Яагаад байгаа юм бэ?	[яагаа-дагайм-бэ]	What's happening?
Юу болоод байна?	[юу болоо-дайн]	What's becoming (happening)?

Supplementary Colloquial Speech

Mongolian colloquial speech may seem like an entirely different language, but never fear! All the words are present and accounted for - they're only pronounced so fast you may not catch them all. Here is a handy guide to understanding the sounds of Mongolian colloquial speech and restoring understanding.

When a word ends in a consonant and the following word is a form of байх, the б softens to a в and, at the fastest pronunciation, is dropped and the two words become melded. The hyphen (-) represents a pause in speaking. The following examples are all given in the fastest pronunciation, but here is one example of how pronunciation becomes faster:

Жишээ нь: Pronunciation Progression

1. Уншиж байна
2. Унш-жвайн
3. Унш-жийн

Жишээ нь: Positive

Уншиж + байна = унш-жийн
(cons.) байгаа = унш-жайгаа
байсан = унш-жээсн
байдаг = уншжээ-дэг

Чи ном уншиж байгаа юм уу?

Чи ном унш-жайгаа-муу?

Are you reading a book?

Тэр ном уншиж байсан юм уу?

Тэр ном уншжэ-сий-муу?

Was s/he reading a book?

In the example, you can see that the б is dropped and combined with the first word, уншиж. Notice that the и in уншиж is also dropped.

Жишээ нь: Negative

Уншаагүй + вайна (б to в)
(vowel) вайгаа
вайсан
вайдаг

Чи ном уншаагүй байгаа юм уу?

Чи ном уншаагүй вайгаа-муу?

Are you not reading a book?

Тэд нар ном уншаагүй байсан юм уу?

Тэд нар ном уншаагүй вай-сий-муу?

They weren't reading a book?

In negative examples, the two words do not become combined because the word ends in vowels. The б is changed to a в sound in order to pronounce the words more quickly.

Байна & Байгаа

Do you remember the difference between байна and байгаа? Байна is used in situations where the speaker can clearly see what is happening. Байгаа is used in situations that need clarification, express curiosity, or are unseen (e.g. asking questions over the phone). Let's look at some of the following examples to see the difference in meaning and pronunciation.

Present Tense

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийж байна уу? [хий-жийн-уу]

Are you doing your homework?

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийж байгаа юм уу? [хий-жайгаа-муу]

Are you doing your homework? (Or writing something else?)

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийгээгүй байна уу? [хий-гээ-гүй-вайнуу]

Aren't you doing your homework?

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийгээгүй байгаа юм уу? [хий-гээ-гүй-вайгаа-муу]

Aren't you doing your homework? (Or writing something else?)

Present Simple Tense

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийдэг үү? [хийд-гүү]

Do you do your homework?

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийдэг юм уу? [хийд-гий-муу]

(Curious) Do you do your homework? (Or something else?)

Past Tense

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийсэн үү? [хийс-нүү]

Did you do your homework?

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийсэн юм уу? [хий-сий-муу]

(Curious) Did you do your homework? (Or something else?)

Future Tense

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийх үү? [хий-хүү]

Will you do your homework?

Чи гэрийн даалгавраа хийх юм уу? [хий-хий-муу]

(Curious) Will you do your homework? (Or something else?)



Байна



Байгаа

ЮМ УУ & ЮМ БЭ

The type of question will inform the speaker on whether or not to use юм уу or юм бэ. A yes/no question will require юм уу, while a question with any other question word will require юм бэ. We've seen юм уу above, but how would юм бэ look colloquially?

Жишээ нь:

Та нар хаашаа явж байгаа юм бэ? Where are you (all) going?
Та нар хаашаа [явжайгаан]?

Чи юу хийж байгаа юм бэ? What are you doing?
Чи юу [хийжайгаан]?

Харилцан яриа:

Жон хаачих* гэж байгаа юм бэ? [хайчихжагаан] Where is John going? (very common)
Дархан. Darkhan.
Яах гэж байгаа юм бэ? [яахижагаан] For what purpose? (Why?)
Энх тайвны корпуст ажиллах гэж байна. To work with Peace Corps.

* хаа + очих = хаачих

Хаачих нь вэ? [Хаачихнуу] Where are you going?

You can see that the combination of байгаа юм бэ become [жагаан]. Practice this aloud with your host family, friends, and teachers. These two phrases are very commonly used.

Exercise: Write out the colloquial pronunciation.

Чи юу хийж байна? Чи юу хий-жийн?

1. Тэр юу хийж байгаа юм бэ? _____
2. Чи Монголд удаж байна уу? _____
3. Та нар Монголд удах юм уу? _____
4. Монголд дасаж байна уу? _____
5. Ямар ном уншиж байгаа юм бэ? _____
6. Та хүлээж байна уу? _____
7. Уржигдар Оюунаатай байсан юм уу? _____
8. Та нар монголоор ярьдаг юм уу? _____
9. Чи хөгжим сонсож байгаа юм уу? _____
10. Тэр найзыгаа хүлээж байгаа юм уу? _____
11. Та архи ууж байгаа юм уу? _____
12. Чи гэрлүүгээ явж байгаа юм уу? _____

Supplementary Grammar

I. HOW TO MAKE NOUNS PLURAL.

Nouns ending with	Suffix for A, O, Y vowels (masculine)	Suffix for Э, Ө, Ү vowels (feminine)	Examples
Consonants (except -Н)	-УУД	-ҮҮД	Хотууд (cities) Гэрүүд (gers)
Long vowels, diphthongs invisible 'Н'	-НУУД	-НҮҮД	Гахайнууд (pigs) Бараанууд (goods)
The consonant 'Н'	-ГУУД	-ГҮҮД	Байшингууд (houses)
Ending with + ч	-ИД	-ИД	Сурагчид (students)

EXCEPTIONS:

Нар is added to most people:

- Ах нар
- Дүү нар
- Багш нар
- Дарга нар

-чууд² is used for groups of people

- Америкчүүд
- Монголчууд
- Солонгосчууд
- Эмэгтэйчүүд / Эрэгтэйчүүд

Common plurals:

- Найзууд (найзуудтайгаа)
- Оюутнууд (university students)
- Залуучууд (young people)

There is no rule in Mongolian which requires agreement in plurality; therefore, the plural suffixes are omitted in most cases.

If the noun has a number before it, the plural suffix is not used.

Би монгол хэлний 5 номтой.

I have five Mongolian language books.

If the noun has a plural before it, the plural suffix is not used.

Би монгол хэлний олон номтой.

I have many Mongolian language books.

II. DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

The information in this section applies mainly to pronunciation, not written grammar. In Mongolian, prepositions are expressed by attaching endings to nouns. This is called declension of nouns. The following types of declensional suffixes appear in Mongolian.

The Nominative Case: The nominative case indicates the subject of a sentence and takes no ending.

The Genitive Case: The genitive case suffixes –ын, –ийн, –ны, –ний, –гийн, and –н indicate possession as expressed in English by the prepositions “of” and the possessive suffix “’s.”

If a word ends with		Examples
Ж, Ч, Г, И, Ш, Ы	-ийн	тавь-тавийн, анги –ангийн, багш-багшийн,
Н *note some words that end with Н also have a “Г” inserted	-ий	хүний, хэний
	-ы	зааны, оюутны
	-(г)ийн	*саван(г)ийн, байшин(г)ийн
Other consonants except Н	-ын	найзын, самбарын, аавын, номын
	-ийн	эхийн, жилийн
Long vowels	-ны	ямааны, хашааны
	-ний	ширээний, өрөөний
Diphthongs	-н	гахайн, толгойн, оройн
Single Vowel	-ийн	өнгө- өнгийн
	-ын/ны	хана- ханын, аяга- аяганы
For people’s names ending in a long vowel or foreign names with a long vowel sound.	-гийн	Пуцjee’s- Пүүжээгийн Christy’s- Кристигийн Tommy’s- Томигийн Grandpa’s- Өвөөгийн

- When the reflexive case follows the genitive case, a “x” is added right before the reflexive case ending.

Examples:

Би найзынхаа номыг уншсан. I read my friend’s book.

Найз + ын + хаа
friend genitive reflexive

Роберт байшингийнхаа хаалгыг эвдэлсэн. Robert broke his house’s door.

Байшин + гийн + хаа
house genitive reflexive

The Accusative Case: The accusative case suffixes –ыг, –ийг and –г denote a direct object of an action.

- –ыг is added to the stems of masculine vowel nouns ending in consonants (except н, г and hard consonants) аав - аавыг
- –ийг is added to the stems of feminine vowel nouns ending in:
- Consonants except ‘н’ and hard consonants: ээж - ээжийг, багш – багшийг
- The consonant ‘г’: баг -багийг
- –г is added to the stems of nouns with the consonant ‘н.’
байшин - байшинг
- Indefinite direct objects do not require suffixes. If the direct object is a proper name, pronoun, or modified noun, a suffix must be added to the noun stem.

Би	номоо	авсан.	I took my book.
Би энэ	номыг	авсан.	I took this book.

The Dative Case: The dative case suffixes –нд, –д and –т are added to the stems of nouns to express the meaning of the English prepositions “at, in, on, to”. The suffix –т is to added nouns ending in the following consonants: г, с, в and р. The suffix –д is added to all other noun stems.

- цаг – цагт
- бичиг – бичигт
- газар - газарт
- жимсэнд дуртай юу?

The Instrumental Case: The instrumental case suffixes –аар, –оор, –ээр and –өөр express the meaning of “by someone or something”, “by means of something or someone,” “through something,” “with something or someone,” etc.

- –аар and –оор are added to the stems of masculine vowel nouns (а, о, у).
- –ээр and –өөр are added to the stems of feminine nouns (э, ө, ү, и).

Жишээ нь:

Би өвөөгөөрөө заалгасан.
Би амралтаар Сэлэнгэ аймагт байсан.
Тэр Заяа багшаар англи хэл заалгана.
Бид нар политехникийн коллежид англи хэлний багшаар ажилладаг.

The Ablative Case: The ablative case suffixes –аас, –оос, –ээс, and –өөс express the meaning of “from” in terms of people, location, direction, and time.

- -аас and –оос are added to the stems of masculine vowel nouns (а, о, у).
- –ээс and –өөс are added to the stems of feminine vowel nouns (э, ө, ү, и).

Жишээ нь:

Энэ номыг дүүгээсээ авсан.
Кал Чойроос сая явсан.

The Comitative Case: The comitative case suffixes –тай –той and –тэй express the meaning of “with, along with”.

- – тай and –той are added to the stems of masculine vowel nouns (а,о,у).
- – тэй is added to the stems of feminine vowel nouns(э, ө, ү, и) .

The Directive Case: The directive case suffixes руу, рүү, луу and лүү express the meaning of “toward” or “to”.

- РУУ is added to the stems of masculine vowel nouns (а,о,у).
- РҮҮ is added to the stems of feminine vowel nouns (э, ө, ү, и) .
- ЛУУ and ЛҮҮ are added only to the stems of nouns ending in the consonant Р.
- The suffixes and are added to directional adverbs, expressing the same meaning as “toward, to, and in.”

Combining a long vowel to the end of these suffixes is very common in everyday conversation, as well as in literature. The long vowels are added for no particular reason.

III. POSSESSIVES.

The suffixes –аа, -оо, -ээ, and -өө indicate that the object expressed by the noun belongs to the subject of a sentence. If the subject is in the first person, the suffix means “my,” and if the subject in is the second person, the suffix means “your”. If the subject is in the third person, the suffix means “his”, “her”, or “its” and if the subject is plural, it means “their”, or “our”. To compare, review the following examples:

Subject	Object	Predicate	
Би	номоо	уншиж байна.	I am reading my book.
Аав	үзгээ	барьж байна.	Father is holding his pen.
Бид	хоолоо	хийж байна.	We are making our food.

IV. DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Mongolian pronouns may take all the declensional suffixes of nouns, as illustrated by the following charts. In English there is no difference in the two cases, but you should note the difference in Mongolian.

- These pronouns come before nouns to express possession:

	my		миний	
	our		бидний	
This is	your	book.	Энэ таны/ чиний	ном.
	his/her/its		түүний / тэрний	
	their		та нарын / тэдний	

- The suffix –X is added to pronouns when they follow the noun.

	mine.		минийх.
	ours.		биднийх.
This book is	yours.	Энэ ном	таных/чинийх.
	his/hers/its.		түүнийх./тэрнийх
	theirs.		тэднийх.

- With proper nouns, you must also add the suffix –X when the proper noun follows the word it modifies. Without the –X, the proper noun becomes an adjective.

Энэ ном хэнийх вэ?		
Трипийн ном.	It is Trip's book	Adjective
Тэр ном Трипийнх.	The book is Trip's	Denotes possession

V. PERSONAL POSSESSIVES.

- The post-position (not pre-position) particles **минь** and **маань** follow nouns to indicate that the modified element belongs to the speaker. The **маань** particle is used for respected persons.

Аав минь/ маань номоо уншиж байна.
My father is reading his book.

- The pronoun **миний** expresses the same meaning. The only difference involves positioning – the pronoun precedes the modified nouns, while the particles follow them.

Аав минь/ маань номоо уншиж байна.

Миний аав номоо уншиж байна.
My father is reading his book.
The two sentences mean exactly the same thing.

- The post-position particles **чинь** and **тань** follow nouns to indicate that the modified element belongs to the second person. The particle **тань** is used for a respected person.

Аав чинь/ тань номоо уншиж байна.
Your father is reading his book.

- Again, the pronouns **чиний** and **таны** express the same meaning. The pronouns precede the modified nouns, while the particles **чинь** and **тань** follow them.

Аав чинь/ тань номоо уншиж байна.
Чиний аав номоо уншиж байна.
Your father is reading his book.

- The post-position particle **нь** follows nouns to indicate that the modified element belongs to the third person.

Аав нь номоо уншиж байна.
His/her father is reading his/her book.

- The pronoun **түүний** expresses the same meaning.

Аав нь номоо уншиж байна.
Түүний аав номоо уншиж байна.
His/her father is reading his book.

The Нь Particle:

- The нь particle can be translated as “one”.

Оюунаа: Алим хэд вэ?

How much are apples?

Худалдагч: Аль нь?

Which one?

Оюунаа: Улаан нь.

The red one.

Худалдагч: Улаан нь 5-н мянга. Ногоон нь 6-н мянга.

The red ones are 5,000. The green ones are 6,000.

- The нь particle can also be used by the speaker to express a very close relationship with the listener. The speaker, using him/herself as a third person subject, will use a word to express their relationship with the listener (Ex. saying багш rather than saying би) followed by нь.

Examples

A teacher to his/her students:

Багш нь та нарт тайлбарлаад өгье.

Let your teacher explain it to you.

(Let me explain it to you)

A mother to her child.

Ээж нь хүүдээ хайртай шүү.

Mother loves her son.

(I love you, my son)

A boyfriend to his girlfriend:

Хайр нь чамайгаа үнсье.

Let your lover kiss you.

(Let me kiss you)

VI. QUESTIONS

A.

Хэн? - Who?	Чиний нэр хэн бэ? Чамайг хэн гэдэг вэ? Хэн бэ? Би гэж хэн бэ?	What is your name? What is your name? Who is this? (for answering the door and phone calls) Who is "I"?
Хэний? – Whose?	Энэ хэний ном бэ? Энэ хэний ах вэ?	Whose book is this? Whose brother is this?
Юу? – What?	Энэ юу вэ? Үүнийг монголоор юу гэдэг вэ?	What is this? How it is called in Mongolian?
Юунд? – (in) What?	Чи юунд дуртай вэ? Та юу юунд амьдардаг вэ?	What do you like? What do live in?
Хэдэн? - How many?	Чи хэдэн ахтай вэ? Хэдэн цаг болж байна вэ?	How many brothers do you have? What time is it?
Хэдийн? - When?	Та хэдийд ирэх вэ?	When will you come?
Хэзээ? - When?	Та хэзээ ирэх вэ?	When will you come?
Хаана? - Where?	Чи хаана амьдардаг вэ? Танай гэр хаана байдаг вэ?	Where do you live? Where is your home?
Хаашаа? - Where to?	Чи маргааш хаашаа явах вэ?	Where will you go tomorrow?
Хаанаас? - Where from?	Чи хаанаас ирсэн бэ?	Where did you come from?
Яаж? - How?	Чи даалгавраа яаж хийсэн бэ? Би монгол хэл яаж сайн сурах вэ?	How did you do your homework? How can I learn Mongolian well?
Яах гэж- What purpose?	Та нар яах гэж ирсэн бэ? Ном бичих гэж ирсэн.	Why did you come here? We came here to write a book.
Хэр урт? - How long?	Энэ цамц хэр урт байна вэ? Орхон гол хэр урт вэ?	How long is this shirt? How long is the Orkhon river?
Хэр том? - How big?	Танай байшин хэр том бэ?	How big is your house?
Хэр хол? - How far?	Танай гэр сургуулиас хэр хол вэ?	How far is your house from the school?
Аль - Which	Чи америкийн аль мужаас ирсэн бэ?	What state did you come from?
Аль хэр - To what degree or extent (adj.)	Кал Ганаагаас аль хэр өндөр вэ?	To what extent is Cal taller than Ganaa?
Яагаад? - Why?	Чи яагаад хоцорсон бэ?	Why are you late?
Ямар? - What kind?	Чи ямар ном унших дуртай вэ?	What kind of books do you like to read?

- Questions containing words like хэн, хаана, хэзээ, ямар, яасан, etc. require the interrogative particles бэ and вэ. The interrogative particle бэ? is used if the last word ends in м, л, н, or в. In all other cases вэ? is used.

- Declensional suffixes are often attached to question words:
хэний, юуны, ямраар, хэнийг, юуг, хэнд, юутай, etc.

- Question words are repeated to inquire about multiple things separately:
Ангид хэн хэн байна вэ? – Who all is in the class?
Чи юу юунд дуртай вэ? – What all do you like?

- In colloquial speech, бэ? and вэ? are often substituted by the word бол?
Багш хэзээ ирэх бол/вэ?

- Yes/ No questions require the interrogative particles уу? and үү?
If the last word in the sentence has the vowels: а, о, у, the interrogative particle уу? is used.
Чи ном авсан уу?

If the last word has the vowels: э, ө, ү, и the particle үү? is used: Чи хоол идсэн үү?

B.

QUESTION PARTICLES	
Questions with a question word: вэ? or бэ?	Yes or no questions: уу? or үү? / юу? or юү?
After a word that ends with: Л, М, Н, В + БЭ? Хэн бэ? Who is it?	Masculine + уу? Чи ном авсан уу? Did you take a book?
Юу идсэн бэ? What did you eat?	Feminine + үү? Чи ном өгсөн үү? Did you give a book?
Others + ВЭ?	After long vowels or diphtongs
Хэзээ ирэх вэ? When will you come?	ЮУ? Чи сүүнд дуртай юу? Do you like milk?
Хэн юу авах вэ? Who will buy what?	ЮҮ? Энэ чамд хэрэгтэй юү? Do you need this?

C. TAG QUESTIONS

• Билээ and билүү are used when the speaker is trying to remember something. “Чи хэн билээ?” Has the sense of, “Who are you (again)?” Or, “Хэдэн сурагч байсан билээ?” How many students were there (again)?” You can see that the билээ and билүү take the place of other question particles.

• Мөн биз дээ and тийм байгаа биз take on the meaning of, “Right?” For example, “Гадаа дулаахан болож байна, тийм байгаа биз?” It’s becoming warm outside, right? After these questions, a response is usually required.

Билүү- Yes/ No questions	Өнөөдөр 20-н билүү, 21-н билүү?	Is today the 20th or the 21st?
Билээ- Question words	Өнөөдөр хэдэн билээ?	What day is it again?
Мөн биз дээ- Clarification.	Тэр чиний дүү мөн биз дээ? Мөн, мөн.	This is your younger brother correct? Correct.
Тийм байгаа биз- Clarification [байгаз]	Крис гоё дуулдаг, тийм байгаа биз? Тийм.	Chris sings well, correct? Correct.

VII. VERB TENSES.

1. Simple present.

• This tense describes habitual actions and events that are true for the timeless present. The suffix –даг⁴ are added to the stems of verbs according to vowel harmony to form this tense.

Би ном уншдаг.	Би ном уншдаггүй.
I book read.	I book read do not.
I read books.	I don't read books.

• Verbs with these suffixes also appear before nouns and act as modifiers.

Миний уншдаг ном.
My read book.
A book, which I read.

2. Present continuous tense.

• The present continuous tense describes actions or events that are in progress at the moment of speaking. In Mongolian, this tense takes the following form.

Verb + ж байна.	Verb + аагүй ⁴ байна.
Би ном уншиж байна.	Би ном уншаагүй байна.
I book reading am.	I book reading not am.
I am reading a book.	I am not reading a book.

3. Past simple.

- The suffixes –сан, -сон, -сэн, and –сөн are attached to verbs to create the most commonly used form of the past tense.

Би гитар тоглосон.
I played guitar.

Би гитар тоглоогүй.
I did not play guitar.

- There are several past tense forms in Mongolian. For describing an action or event that happened both in the past and in the present of the speaker, the suffixes –лаа, -лоо, -лээ, and –лөө are added to the stem of verbs. These suffixes –лаа⁴ are almost never used for making questions.

Тэр сая явлаа.

He has just gone.

- The suffix –в expresses past tense. This suffix is not common in colloquial speech. However, it is frequently used in written Mongolian. Here are a few phrases where it is spoken regularly.

Тэр хэзээ ирэв?	= Тэр хэзээ ирсэн бэ?	When did he come?
Сайхан амрав уу?	= Сайхан амарсан уу?	Did you rest well?
Сая явж ирэв үү?	= Сая явж ирсэн үү?	Did you just arrive?

- Verbs can also be used as modifiers. Most common are the simple past tense forms, “-сан⁴” and the negative “-аагүй⁴.”

Миний уншсан ном.	Миний уншаагүй ном.
My have read a book.	My haven't read a book.
The book that I read.	The book that I didn't read.

However, other tenses are also used. For example, the infinitive tense can be used to turn a verb into a modifier expressing the future tense.

Явах хүн байгаа юу?	Хариулах сурагч байна уу?
To go person is Q-particle?	To respond student is question-particle
Is there a person who will go?	Is there a student who will respond?

Another quick example, “тамхи татдаг хүн,” roughly translated “cigarette smokes person,” could be used as a translation of the word ‘smoker’.

- The two other past tense suffixes –жээ and -чээ indicate an action that occurred in the speaker’s absence. Despite the vowel harmony rule, they are freely added to verb stems. The only restriction is that the suffix –чээ is added to verb stems ending in the following consonants: в, с, р, and г. Ex. авчээ, өгчээ,

- Questions using this tense are formed by attaching –ж or –ч to the verb and adding an interrogative particle (уу?, үү?, бэ?, or вэ?).

Багш ирж үү?	Did a teacher come to class?
Иржээ.	Came.
Ангид хэн ирж вэ?	Who came to the class?
Сувдаа, Болормаа 2 иржээ.	Suvdaa and Bolormaa came.

4. Future tense.

- The suffixes –на, -но, -нэ and –нө are added to stems of verbs to indicate a future action.

Би орой ирнэ.	Би орой ирэхгүй.
I tonight come will.	I tonight come will not
I will come tonight.	I will not come tonight.

- The interrogative form of this tense is made by attaching the suffix –х to the verb stem and adding a question particle.

Чи орой ирэх үү?
 You tonight come will
 Will you come tonight?

- For expressing future intentions, plans, or predictions for the near future, the following structure is used like ‘going to...’

Би маргааш явах гэж байна.	Би маргааш явах гээгүй байна.
I tomorrow to go am going.	I tomorrow to go not am going.
I am going to go tomorrow.	I am not going to go tomorrow.

- For expressing future wishes and intentions that can be realized, the suffixes –маар байна, -моор байна, -мээр байна and –мөөр байна are added to the stems of verbs. -Маар⁴ байна expresses a desire similar to the verb хүсэх (to wish, want, desire).

Би гадаа гармаар байна.	Би гадаа гармааргүй байна.
I outside go out want.	I outside go out want not
I want to go outside.	I do not want to go outside.

VIII. REQUESTS.

- There are several ways to make requests in Mongolian. The following structure is used for expressing a formal request, usually in writing.

VERB + -на⁴ + уу²?
 Багш аа, та энэ үгийг бичнэ үү?

- Adding the suffix –аач⁴ to verb stems and speaking in a soft, raising tone also indicates a request.

Багш аа, та энэ үгийг бичээч.

- The following structure is also widely used.

VERB +ж өгөөч.
 Багш аа, та энэ үгийг бичиж өгөөч.

- The following structure is equivalent to the English request structure “won’t you + verb”

VERB +хгүй юу?
 Багш аа, та энэ үгийг бичихгүй юу? Teacher, won’t you write this word.

XI. ASKING PERMISSION.

- The following structure is used for asking for permission.

VERB +ж/ч болох уу?

Багш аа, би явж болох уу? Teacher, may I go?

- Short positive responses include.

<u>За</u>	<u>Тэг</u>	<u>Болно</u>
Би явлаа.	Хамт сурья тэгэх үү?	Багш аа, би явж болох уу?
За.	Тэг тэг.	Болно, болно.

- Full responses are expressed using the following structure.

Besides “За за. / Тэг тэг. / Болно болно.” there is the structure:

VERB +ж/ч болно. Тэг тэг явж болно.

- Negative short answers include: Үгүй/ болохгүй. (No/You may not.)
- A full negative response is expressed by using the following structure:

Үгүй/ болохгүй

VERB +ж/ч болохгүй. Энд тамхи татаж болохгүй. (You may not smoke here.)

POLITE REQUEST			POLITE COMMAND		
Verb stem + аарай ⁴ Please ...			Verb stem + я /ё /е Let me .../let us ...		
а/ у	-аарай	аваарай	а/ у	-я	авъя
о	-оорой	олоорой	о	-ё	ольё
э/ ү/ и	-ээрэй	ирээрэй	э/ ө/ ү/ и	-е	ирье
ө	-өөрэй	өгөөрэй			
Notice the following spelling rule: Long vowel and diphthong + Г+ аарай ⁴ хийГээрэй, ууГаарай			Notice the following spelling rule: Consonant + ъя/ ъё/ ъе Явъя, олъё, ирье Vowels + я/ ё/ е Ууя, гаргая		

XII. PRECEDING TENSE.

- The suffix –аад⁴ are attached to verbs to denote an action which precedes the following verb.
- Verbs with this suffix never appear as the final verb in sentences, nor do they indicate tense; rather, this suffix is used to combine two verbs.

Би хичээлээ тар+ аад гэртээ харьсан.

I class finish home go + past tense.

I finished my class and went home.

XIII. PROBABILITY.

- The following structures are used for expressing the probability of an action.

VERB + TENSE + байх

Би монгол хэл хурдан сурах байх.
I'll probably learn Mongolian quickly.

Би монгол хэл хурдан сурсан байх.
I probably learned Mongolian quickly.

Би монгол хэл хурдан сурч байгаа байх.
I'm probably learning Mongolian quickly.

- The following structure can also be used to express probability.

VERB + ж/ч магадгүй.
Би монгол хэл хурдан сурч магадгүй.
I might learn Mongolian quickly.

- For other tenses, the following structure is useful.

VERB + TENSE байж магадгүй.
Би монгол хэл хурдан сурсан байж магадгүй.
I might have learned Mongolian quickly.

- **Боломжтой, боломжгүй:** are words used in conversation to express possibility. **Боломжтой** loosely means, "it is possible/ it can happen." While **боломжгүй** loosely means, "it is not possible/ it cannot happen."

XIV. MODAL VERBS

• Modal verbs are used to express likelihood, ability, permission, and obligation. The following chart presents the main modal verbs together so that the differences are apparent.

Can чадах	Verb + ж/ч чадах уу? Verb + ж/ч чадах вэ?	Чи морь унаж чадах уу? Чи ямар морь унаж чадах вэ?	Can you ride a horse? What kind of horses can you ride?
	Verb + ж/ч чадна. Verb + ж/ч чадахгүй	Би морь унаж чадна. Би морь унаж чадахгүй.	I can ride. I can not ride a horse.
Need хэрэгтэй	Verb + х хэрэгтэй юу? Verb + х хэрэгтэй вэ?	Би морь унах хэрэгтэй юу? Би ямар морь унах хэрэгтэй вэ?	Do I need to ride a horse? What kind of horses do I need to ride?
	Verb + х хэрэгтэй. Verb + х хэрэггүй.	Чи морь унах хэрэгтэй. Чи морь унах хэрэггүй.	You need to ride a horse. You don't need to ride a horse.
Must ёстой	Verb + х ёстой юу? Verb + х ёстой вэ?	Би морь унах ёстой юу? Би ямар морь унах ёстой вэ?	Must I ride a horse? What kind of horses must I ride?
	Verb + х ёстой. Verb + х ёсгүй.	Чи морь унах ёстой. Чи морь унах ёсгүй.	You must ride a horse. You must not ride a horse.
Maybe Might магадгүй	Verb + ж/ч магадгүй.	Тэр морь сайн унаж магадгүй.	He might ride a horse well.
	Verb + ж/ч магадгүй.	Тэр морь сайн унасан байж магадгүй.	He may have ridden a horse well.
Asking for permission	Verb + ж/ч болно.	Чи одоо явж болно.	You may/can go now.
	Verb + ж/ч болохгүй.	Чи одоо явж болохгүй.	You may/can not go now.
	Verb + ж/ч болох уу?	Би одоо явж болох уу?	Can/may I go now?
	Verb + ж/ч болох вэ?	Би хэзээ явж болох вэ?	When may/can I go?

XIV. ADJECTIVES.

In Mongolian adjectives always occur before the modified word.

Comparison of Adjectives

• When comparing equal things, the words шиг and мэт are used. These words are equivalent to “like” in English. Шиг is more common than мэт.

Цас шиг цагаан цаас.

The paper is white like snow.

- A comparison in which one thing is superior to the other uses the following structure:

Цаас цаснаас цагаан.
The paper is whiter than snow.

- One of the suffixes –аас⁴ is added to the comparative word and the adjective is placed before the noun.
- The superlative is expressed in Mongolian by the word хамгийн. This word is placed before the adjective.

Хамгийн цагаан цаас.
Whitest paper.

- For colors, there is a more specific way to modify or intensify the color described

хав хар	цав цагаан	нов ногоон
very black	very white	very green

Adjective orders: The Mongolian adjectives describe colors, qualities, sizes, masses, characteristics, movements, etc. of nouns.

Colors: улаан, хар (red, black)
Qualities: сайн, зөөлөн (good, soft)
Sizes: том, хавтгай (big, flat)
Distances: хол, ойр (far, near)
Characteristics: ухаантай, хөгжилтэй (smart, fun)
Movements: хурдан, удаан (fast, slow)

Example:

Тэр улаан, зөөлөн цамц чамд таарч байна.
That red, soft shirt fits you.

XV. NUMERALS.

- When numerals occur before words, they become modifiers and, therefore, must have the suffix –н attached to their stem. The numerals “one” and “two,” however, are exceptions.

Нэг - нэг ном	Хоёр - хоёр ном
One - one book	Two - two books
Гурав - гурван ном	Хорь - хорин ном
Three - three books	Twenty – twenty books

- The suffixes –дугаар and –дүгээр indicate ordinal numbers.

Нэг - нэгдүгээр сар	Тав - тавдугаар сар
One - first month (January)	Five - fifth month (May)

- The suffixes –дахь and –дэх express the same meaning. They are used for routine ranking, or for denoting how many times something has happened.

Анхаар! (Pay attention)

Numerals often appear with declensional suffixes.

Би энэ номыг арван доллараар авсан.
I bought this book for ten dollars.

Би энэ номыг арваар авсан.
I bought this book for ten.

Нэг - нэг дэх өдөр
One - first day (Monday)

Тав - тав дахь өдөр
Five - fifth day (Friday)

- It is interesting to note that the months are expressed by the numeral suffixes –дугаар and –дүгээр, while days are expressed by the numeral suffixes –дахь and -дэх.

Months / Сарууд:

Нэгдүгээр сар	нэг сар	January
Хоёрдугаар сар	хоёр сар	February
Гуравдугаар сар	гурван сар	March
Дөрөвдүгээр сар	дөрвөн сар	April
Тавдугаар сар	таван сар	May
Зургаадугаар сар	зургаан сар	June
Долдугаар сар	долоон сар	July
Наймдугаар сар	найман сар	August
Есдүгээр сар	есөн сар	September
Аравдугаар сар	арван сар	October
Арваннэгдүгээр сар	арван нэгэн сар	November
Арванхоёрдугаар сар	арван хоёр сар	December

Days of the week / Долоо хоногийн өдрүүд:

Нэг дэх өдөр	Даваа	Monday
Хоёр дахь өдөр	Мягмар	Tuesday
Гурав дахь өдөр	Лхагва	Wednesday
Дөрөв дэх өдөр	Пүрэв	Thursday
Тав дахь өдөр	Баасан	Friday
Хагас сайн өдөр	Бямба	Saturday (half good day)
Бүтэн сайн өдөр	Ням	Sunday (full good day)

- For expressing the phrase “about ten”, the suffix –аад⁴ are added to cardinal numerals.

Арван ном - арваад ном	Гучин ном - гучаад ном
Ten books - about ten books	Thirty books – about thirty books

- For expressing “more than” or “less than” the following words are used.

Арван таван ном	More than -	арван тав гаруй ном
Fifteen books		more than fifteen books

Арван таван ном	Less than -	арван тав шахам ном
Fifteen books		less than fifteen books

- **Collective Numerals:** The suffixes –уул(аа) and –үүл(ээ) added to numerals implies the meaning “together.”

Бид гурвуул/аа/ явна.
Олуулаа явсан.

The three of us shall go together.
A lot of people went.

XVIII. NOUN CASES

The Mongolian language has 8 cases.

Cases	Question words			Case ending	Examples
	For someone	For something	Time, location and direction question		
Nominative	Хэн? Who?	Юу? What?		None	
Genitive	Хэний? Whose	Юуны? What kind of?		-ийн, -ын, -н, ний, -ны	Аавын нэр Father's name, Үхрийн мах Cow's meat (beef)
Dative- Locative	Хэнд? To whom?	Юунд? What	Хэзээ? When? Хаана? Where?	-нд, -д, -т	Аавд, ээжид хайртай Love dad and mom
Accusative	Хэнийг? Whom?	Юуг? What?		-ийг, -ыг, -г	Аавыг, ээжийг ... гэдэг Father and mother are called
Ablative	Хэнээс? From whom	Юунаас? From What?	Хаанаас? From where?	-аас, -ээс, -оос, -өөс	Дэлгүүрээс ав- Buy in a store
Instrumental	Хэнээр? By whom	Юугаар? By what means?		-аар, -ээр, -оор, -өөр	Багшаар заалга- I have my teacher teach...
Comitative	Хэнтэй? With whom	Юутай? With what?		-тай, -тэй, -той	Аавтай, ээжтэй амьдрах Live with dad and mom
Directive	Хэн рүү? Towards whom	Юу руу? Toward what?	Хаашаа? Where to?	руу, рүү луу, лүү	Аав руу, ээж рүү гүй- Run to dad and mom

• The nominative case in the sentence is unaffected by the verb. The object will take a case ending based on the verb. You can see in the sentences below that “би” remains the same, but the object, “Жорж”, takes different case endings.

Nominative	Case	Verb
Би	Жоржид	тусалдаг.
	Жоржоос	асуудаг.
	Жоржтой	явсан.
	Жоржыг	хүндэлдэг.

XVII. VERBS IN CASES.

Verbs have definite case usage of nouns and pronouns. Thus, you need to memorize which verb is used in which case. This chart is for using the following nouns as objects of a sentence, not subjects. For example, if I wanted to know how to say “Jake borrowed from me,” I would look for the verb “borrow” (ablative case column, 9th down). I would see that it is in the ablative case column, so I would know that the sentence would have “надаас” (me in the ablative, “from me,” translated roughly) in it. Jake would still be the subject of the sentence. When constructing examples with this chart, use simple sentences that only have a subject and object in order to better understand how the verbs are used. Using more than 2 nouns in the sentence will require more than 2 cases, which the chart will not be able to help you with.

	Dative	Accusative	Ablative	Comitative
P	Надад	Намайг	Надаас	Надтай
r	Чамд	Чамайг	Чамаас	Чамтай
o	Танд	Таныг	Танаас	Тантай
n	Түүнд/ тэрэнд	Түүнийг/ тэрнийг	Түүнээс/ тэрнээс	Түүнтэй / тэрэнтэй
o	Бидэнд	Биднийг	Биднээс	Бидэнтэй
u	Та нарт	Та нарыг	Та нараас	Та нартай
n	Тэдэнд	Тэднийг	Тэднээс	Тэдэнтэй
s				
N	Чимгээд	Чимгээг	Чимгээгээс	Чимгээтэй
o	Багшид	Багшийг	Багшаас	Багштай
u	Найзад	Найзыг	Найзаас	Найзтай
n	Захиралд	Захирлыг	Захирлаас	Захиралтай
s				
V	Баярла – (thank to)	Айлга- (scare)	Ав- (take)	Адилхан – (look like)
e	Бэлэглэ- (give as a	Ал- (kill)	Ай- (afraid of)	Ажилла- (work with)
r	gift)	Асар- (take care of)	Асуу- (ask)	Бүжиглэ- (dance with)
b	Гомд- (be offended)	Бүртгэ- (register)	Болгоомжил- (be	Гэрлэ- (marry to)
s	Дурла- (love)	Буцаа- (send back)	careful)	Зугаал- (take a walk
	Заа- (teach)	Гомдоо- (offend)	Гуй- (request/ask)	with)
	Зар- (sell)	Дага – (follow)	Дуул- (hear)	Зодолд- (fight)
	Зодуул- (be beaten)	Загна- (shout at)	Залх- (tired of)	Ир- (come with)
	Итгэ- (believe)	Зүүдэл- (dream)	Зугтаа- (run away)	Мэндэл- (greet)
	Мэдэгд- (inform)	Зэмлэ- (blame)	Зээл- (borrow)	Маргалд- (debate with)
	Ойлгуул- (make un-	Магт- (praise)	Лавла- (inquire)	Найзл- (become a
	derstand)	Март- (forget)	Сал- (divorce)	friend)
	Өг- (give)	Сана- (miss)	Салга- (separate)	Өрсөлд- (compete
	Саад бол- (interrupt)	Сонго- (choose)	Сонс- (listen to)	with)
	Тохиолд- (happen)	Тань- (recognize)	Хүлээн ав- (receive	Танилц- (to meet)
	Таалагд- (like)	Түлх- (push)	from)	Тогл- (play with)
	Тайлбарла- (explain)	Уучил- (forgive)	Уйд- (sick of)	Тооц- (calculate with)
	Тусла- (help)	Үзэн яд- (hate)	Үлгэр ав- (take a	Унт- (sleep with)
	Түрээслүүл- (rent)	Үнс- (kiss)	good example from)	Уулз- (meet with/see)
	Уурла- (be angry)	Хайрла- (love)	Хоцор- (lag behind)	Харьцуул- (compare)
	Үзүүл- (show)	Хар- (look at)	Хулгайл- (steal)	Хэрэлд- (argue with)
	Хайртай (love you)	Хүндэл- (respect)	Хүс- (wish from)	Яв- (go with)
	Хэл- (tell)	Шагна- (reward)	Шаард- (require)	Ярь- (speak with)

INDEX OF GRAMMAR

A

Ablative case – FROM, THAN (-аас ⁴)	27, 181
Accusative case (-ийг, -ыг, -г)	24, 35, 67, 135
Adjectives (colors)	193
(quality and size)	83
(-ish-reddish)	100
(emotion and feeling)	112
Adverbs (of frequency)	119
Asking for permission	64, 75

В

“To be” (байна, байгаа, байдаг)	20-22
---------------------------------	-------

С

Causative case	170
Collective numerals	75
Comitative case “-тай ³ ”	42, 103
Comparative	113
Compound sentence w/and, then...	76, 159
Conjunction “Яагаад гэвэл”/“учраас”	136

D

Dative case (-д/т)	56, 103, 128, 149
Directive case (руу, луу)	90, 182

E

Expressing wish or desire	50, 61, 141, 189
---------------------------	------------------

F

Future tense (-на ⁴)	32, 61
Future tense (near future) –лаа ⁴	61

G

Genitive case	36
(with prepositions of location)	82

H

“to have” as a comitative case	42
--------------------------------	----

I

Imperatives	157
Instrumental case	151, 169
“If” and “when” sentence	145
Interjections	120

M

Making a request	130, 133
“-маар ⁴ байна” (would like)	61
Modal verb: can, may	64

Modal verb: ёстой (must)	128
Modal verb: хэрэгтэй (need)	128

N

Negatives “үгүй”, “биш,” “-гүй”	35
Numbers	41, 43

P

Particle “мөн”	35
Particle “юм, ч, тиймээ”	102
Past tense, simple (-сан ⁴)	32, 188
Past tense suffix “-сан” as an adjective	62
Polite commands/please	84, 130, 156
Possessive particles мань, минь, тань, etc.	42
Possessives (plural suffix) “-хан ⁴ ”	34
Phrase for the meaning “of course”	129
Present continuous tense	49, 102
Present simple tense (-даг ⁴)	49, 119
Prepositions “after, before”	90
Prepositions of a location	81
Prepositions of direction	83/4
Probability	191
Pronouns (personal) “та” vs. “чи”	23
Pronouns in genitive case (possessive)	23
Pronouns in accusative case (objective)	23

R

Recent Past Tense “-чих-”	170
Reflexive ending -аа ⁴	94

Q

Question word: хэн?	35, 185
Question particles: бэ? вэ?	24, 185
Question particles: юу?, үү?	42, 185
Question particles: уу?, үү?	19, 185

S

Superlatives	113
--------------	-----

T

Telling time	88
--------------	----

U

Usage of let’s, let me	67
Usage of “гэх” (to call)	24, 135



To future design editors of this book:

Extensive revision was made to this edition using Adobe InDesign CS5.5. Please direct any questions or assistance request to Chris Meade (keowee36@gmail.com) and Cal Brackin (cbrackin@gmail.com)